

Oracle® Communications
Diameter Signaling Router
DSR Cloud Software Upgrade Guide
Release 7.1.x/7.2
E66062, Revision 03

August 2016

Copyright © 2010, 2016 Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, then the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information about content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services unless otherwise set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services, except as set forth in an applicable agreement between you and Oracle.



CAUTION: Use only the upgrade procedure included in the Upgrade Kit.
Before upgrading any system, please access My Oracle Support (MOS) (<https://support.oracle.com>) and review any Technical Service Bulletins (TSBs) that relate to this upgrade.

My Oracle Support (MOS) (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration. Refer to Appendix J for instructions on accessing this site.

Call the CAS main number at 1-800-223-1711 (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | | |
|----------|---|-----------|
| 1 | INTRODUCTION..... | 9 |
| 1.1 | Purpose and Scope | 9 |
| 1.1.1 | What is Not Covered by this Document | 9 |
| 1.2 | References..... | 9 |
| 1.3 | Acronyms | 9 |
| 1.4 | Terminology..... | 11 |
| 1.5 | How to Use this Document | 12 |
| 1.5.1 | Executing Procedures..... | 12 |
| 1.6 | Recommendations..... | 13 |
| 1.6.1 | Frequency of Health Checks..... | 13 |
| 1.6.2 | Large Installation Support | 13 |
| 1.6.3 | Logging of Upgrade Activities | 13 |
| 1.7 | Warnings, Cautions, and Notes | 14 |
| 1.7.1 | PCA/PDRA Application – PCRf Pooling Migration Precheck | 14 |
| 1.7.2 | Review Release Notes..... | 14 |
| 2 | GENERAL DESCRIPTION | 15 |
| 2.1 | Supported Upgrade Paths | 15 |
| 2.1.1 | Supported Upgrade Paths to 7.1.x..... | 15 |
| 2.1.2 | Supported Upgrade Paths to 7.2 | 16 |
| 2.2 | Geo-diverse Site (Active/Standby/Spare PCA configuration) | 18 |
| 2.3 | SDS Upgrade | 18 |
| 2.4 | Traffic Management during Upgrade | 18 |
| 2.5 | Automated Server Group Upgrade | 19 |
| 2.5.1 | Pausing, Restarting, and Canceling Automated Server Group Upgrade | 19 |
| 3 | UPGRADE PLANNING AND PRE-UPGRADE PROCEDURES | 21 |
| 3.1 | Required Materials and Information..... | 21 |
| 3.1.1 | Application ISO Image File / Media..... | 21 |
| 3.1.2 | Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses..... | 22 |
| 3.2 | Plan Upgrade Maintenance Windows | 24 |
| 3.2.1 | Calculating Maintenance Windows Required | 25 |
| 3.2.2 | Maintenance Window 1 (NOAM Site Upgrades) | 26 |
| 3.2.3 | Maintenance Window 2 and beyond (SOAM Site Upgrades)..... | 27 |
| 3.3 | Prerequisite Procedures | 31 |
| 3.3.1 | Hardware Upgrade Preparation | 31 |
| 3.3.2 | Required Materials Check..... | 32 |
| 3.3.3 | Data Collection - Verification of Global and Site Configuration Data..... | 33 |
| 3.3.4 | DSR ISO Administration | 45 |
| 3.3.5 | Full Backup of DB Run Environment at Each Server | 50 |
| 3.3.6 | Network Interface Workaround | 54 |
| 3.3.7 | IDIH Pre-Upgrade | 55 |
| 3.4 | Software Upgrade Execution Overview | 56 |
| 3.4.1 | Accepting the Upgrade | 57 |
| 4 | NOAM UPGRADE EXECUTION..... | 58 |
| 4.1 | NOAM Pre-Upgrade Checks and Backup..... | 59 |
| 4.1.1 | NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x..... | 59 |
| 4.1.2 | NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.2..... | 63 |
| 4.1.3 | NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup..... | 66 |
| 4.2 | Disable Global Provisioning..... | 67 |
| 4.3 | NOAM Upgrade..... | 68 |

| | | |
|---------------|--|------------|
| 4.3.1 | PCA (formerly PDRA) Topology Hiding Configuration..... | 70 |
| 4.4 | Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status..... | 72 |
| 4.5 | Allow Provisioning (post NOAM Upgrade) | 74 |
| 5 | SOAM UPGRADE EXECUTION..... | 75 |
| 5.1 | Select SOAM Site Upgrade Path | 75 |
| 5.2 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Activities | 76 |
| 5.2.1 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups | 76 |
| 5.2.2 | Alternate SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup | 79 |
| 5.2.3 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Checks | 82 |
| 5.2.4 | Disable Site Provisioning | 86 |
| 5.3 | SOAM Upgrade (1+1)..... | 87 |
| 5.3.1 | Upgrade SOAMs (1+1) | 88 |
| 5.3.2 | Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1) | 90 |
| 5.3.3 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (1+1)..... | 92 |
| 5.4 | SOAM Upgrade (N+0) | 93 |
| 5.4.1 | Upgrade SOAMs (N+0)..... | 94 |
| 5.4.2 | Upgrade Multiple DA-MPs (N+0) | 96 |
| 5.4.3 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (N+0)..... | 98 |
| 5.4.4 | Upgrade IPFE(s) (N+0) | 99 |
| 5.5 | PCA Upgrade | 100 |
| 5.5.1 | PCA SOAM Upgrade - Site 1 | 101 |
| 5.5.2 | Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1) | 103 |
| 5.5.3 | Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1)..... | 107 |
| 5.5.4 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 1) | 109 |
| 5.5.5 | Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA – Site 1) | 110 |
| 5.5.6 | PCA SOAM Upgrade - Site 2..... | 111 |
| 5.5.7 | Upgrade SBR (PCA Site 2) | 114 |
| 5.5.8 | Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2)..... | 118 |
| 5.5.9 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 2) | 120 |
| 5.5.10 | Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA Site 2) | 121 |
| 6 | SOAM POST-UPGRADE VERIFICATION..... | 122 |
| 6.1.1 | Allow Site Provisioning..... | 122 |
| 6.1.2 | SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Checks..... | 123 |
| 7 | BACKOUT PROCEDURE OVERVIEW..... | 128 |
| 7.1 | Recovery Procedures | 130 |
| 7.2 | Backout Health Check | 130 |
| 7.3 | Perform Emergency Backout..... | 133 |
| 7.3.1 | Emergency Site Backout..... | 133 |
| 7.3.2 | Emergency NOAM Backout..... | 136 |
| 7.4 | Perform Normal Backout | 137 |
| 7.4.1 | Normal Site Backout | 137 |
| 7.4.2 | Normal NOAM Backout..... | 140 |
| 7.5 | Backout Single Server | 141 |
| 7.6 | Backout Multiple Servers | 147 |
| 7.7 | IDIH Backout | 153 |
| 7.7.1 | Oracle Server Backout..... | 153 |
| 7.7.2 | Mediation and Application Server Backout | 153 |
| 7.8 | Post-Backout Health Check..... | 154 |
| 8 | APPENDICES..... | 155 |
| Appendix A. | Post Upgrade Procedures..... | 156 |
| Appendix A.1. | Accept Upgrade | 156 |
| Appendix A.2. | Undeploy ISO..... | 158 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Appendix A.3. PCA Activation | 159 |
| Appendix B. Command Outputs..... | 160 |
| Appendix C. PCRF Pooling Migration Check | 161 |
| Appendix D. Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration..... | 164 |
| Appendix E. Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration..... | 175 |
| Appendix F. Expired Password Workaround Procedure | 182 |
| Appendix F.1. Inhibit Password Aging..... | 182 |
| Appendix F.2. Enable Password Aging | 183 |
| Appendix G. Server Upgrade using platcfg | 184 |
| Appendix H. IDIH Upgrade at a Site | 187 |
| Appendix H.1. Oracle Guest Upgrade | 187 |
| Appendix H.2. Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests | 190 |
| Appendix I. Recovering From A Failed Upgrade | 193 |
| Appendix J. Accessing Oracle Customer Support Site..... | 197 |

LIST OF FIGURES

| | |
|--|----|
| Figure 1. Example Procedure steps used in this document..... | 12 |
| Figure 2. DSR 7.1.x Supported Upgrade Paths..... | 15 |
| Figure 3. DSR 7.2 Supported Upgrade Paths..... | 16 |
| Figure 4. Active Tasks Screen | 19 |
| Figure 5. Upgrade Maintenance Windows for 3-Tier Upgrade | 24 |

List of Tables

| | |
|--|-----|
| Table 1: Acronyms..... | 9 |
| Table 2: Terminology | 11 |
| Table 3: Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses | 22 |
| Table 4: Prerequisite Procedures Overview | 31 |
| Table 5: IDIH Upgrade Preparation Overview. | 55 |
| Table 6: NOAM Upgrade Execution Overview..... | 58 |
| Table 7: Upgrade Path Reference | 75 |
| Table 8: Site Upgrade Execution Overview..... | 87 |
| Table 9: Site Upgrade Execution Overview (N+0)..... | 93 |
| Table 10: Site Upgrade Execution Overview (PCA, Site 1)..... | 100 |
| Table 11: Site Upgrade Execution Overview (PCA, Site 2)..... | 111 |
| Table 12: Emergency Backout Procedure Overview..... | 128 |
| Table 13: Normal Backout Procedure Overview..... | 129 |
| Table 14: IDIH Upgrade Execution Overview | 187 |

List of Procedures

| | |
|---|----|
| Procedure 1. Required Materials Check | 32 |
| Procedure 2: Verification of Configuration Data..... | 33 |
| Procedure 3: Data Collection for Source Release 7.0.1 | 34 |
| Procedure 4: Data Collection for Source Release 7.1.x | 37 |
| Procedure 5: Data Collection for Source Release 7.2..... | 41 |
| Procedure 6: DSR ISO Administration..... | 45 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Procedure 7: Full Backup of DB Rbun Environment for Release 7.0.1 | 50 |
| Procedure 8: Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 7.1.x and later | 52 |
| Procedure 9: Network Interface Workaround..... | 54 |
| Procedure 10: IDIH Upgrade Preparation..... | 55 |
| Procedure 11: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x | 59 |
| Procedure 12: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.2 | 63 |
| Procedure 13: NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup | 66 |
| Procedure 14: Disable Global Provisioning..... | 67 |
| Procedure 15: NOAM Upgrade | 68 |
| Procedure 16: PCA (formerly PDRA) Topology Hiding Configuration | 70 |
| Procedure 17: Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status | 72 |
| Procedure 18: Allow Provisioning (post NOAM Upgrade)..... | 74 |
| Procedure 19: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups..... | 76 |
| Procedure 20: Alternate SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup | 79 |
| Procedure 21: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2 | 82 |
| Procedure 22: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x..... | 84 |
| Procedure 23: Disable Site Provisioning | 86 |
| Procedure 24: Upgrade SOAM Pre-Checks (1+1)..... | 88 |
| Procedure 25: Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, ASG)..... | 89 |
| Procedure 26: Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, manual)..... | 89 |
| Procedure 27: Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, ASG) | 90 |
| Procedure 28: Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, manual) | 91 |
| Procedure 29: Upgrade SS7-MPs (1+1)..... | 92 |
| Procedure 30: Upgrade Pre-Checks (N+0) | 94 |
| Procedure 31: Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, ASG)..... | 95 |
| Procedure 32: Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, manual)..... | 95 |
| Procedure 33: Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, ASG) | 96 |
| Procedure 34: Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, manual)..... | 97 |
| Procedure 35: Upgrade SS7-MPs (N+0)..... | 98 |
| Procedure 36: Upgrade IPFE(s) (N+0) | 99 |
| Procedure 37: Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA – Site 1)..... | 101 |
| Procedure 38: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)..... | 102 |
| Procedure 39: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, manual) | 102 |
| Procedure 40: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)..... | 103 |
| Procedure 41: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, manual) | 104 |
| Procedure 42: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)..... | 107 |
| Procedure 43: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, manual)..... | 108 |
| Procedure 44: Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 1)..... | 109 |
| Procedure 45: Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA – Site 1) | 110 |
| Procedure 46: Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA Site 2)..... | 112 |
| Procedure 47: Upgrade SOAMS (PCA Site 2, ASG) | 113 |
| Procedure 48: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA Site 2, manual) | 113 |
| Procedure 49: Upgrade SBRs (PCA Site 2, ASG)..... | 114 |
| Procedure 50: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 2, manual) | 115 |
| Procedure 51: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, ASG) | 118 |
| Procedure 52: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, manual)..... | 119 |
| Procedure 53: Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 2)..... | 120 |
| Procedure 54: Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA Site 2) | 121 |
| Procedure 55: Allow Site Provisioning..... | 122 |

| | |
|--|-----|
| Procedure 56: SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check..... | 123 |
| Procedure 57: Verify Post-Upgrade Status | 126 |
| Procedure 58: Backout Setup..... | 130 |
| Procedure 59: Emergency Site Backout..... | 133 |
| Procedure 60: Emergency NOAM Backout..... | 136 |
| Procedure 61: Normal Site Backout..... | 137 |
| Procedure 62: Normal NOAM Backout..... | 140 |
| Procedure 63: Backout Single Server | 141 |
| Procedure 64: Backout Multiple Servers | 147 |
| Procedure 65: Oracle Server Backout..... | 153 |
| Procedure 66: Post-Backout Health Check..... | 154 |
| Procedure 67: Accept Upgrade | 156 |
| Procedure 68: Undeploy ISO | 158 |
| Procedure 69: PCA Post Upgrade Procedure..... | 159 |
| Procedure 70: PCRf Pooling Migration Check..... | 161 |
| Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration | 164 |
| Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration..... | 175 |
| Procedure 73: Expired Password Workaround Procedure | 182 |
| Procedure 74: Expired Password Workaround Removal Procedure..... | 183 |
| Procedure 75: Server Upgrade Using Platcfg | 184 |
| Procedure 76: Oracle Guest Upgrade..... | 187 |
| Procedure 77: Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests..... | 190 |
| Procedure 78: Recovering from a Failed Upgrade..... | 193 |

This page intentionally left blank.

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Purpose and Scope

This document describes methods utilized and procedures executed to perform the following upgrades:

- Major upgrade from DSR 7.0.1 to 7.1.x
- Incremental upgrade from an earlier DSR 7.1.x release to a later 7.1.x release
- Major upgrade from DSR 7.0.1 or 7.1.x to 7.2
- Incremental upgrade from an earlier DSR 7.2 release to a later 7.2 release

The upgrade of cloud deployments is covered by this document. The audience for this document includes Oracle customers as well as following internal groups: Software Development, Quality Assurance, Information Development, and Consulting Services including NPx. This document provides step-by-step instructions to execute any incremental or major cloud software upgrade.

The execution of this procedure assumes that the DSR 7.1.x or 7.2 software load (ISO file, CD-ROM or other form of media) has already been delivered to the customer's premises. This includes delivery of the software load to the local workstation being used to perform this upgrade.

1.1.1 What is Not Covered by this Document

The following items are beyond the scope of this document. Refer to the specified reference for additional information.

- Distribution of DSR 7.1.x/7.2 software loads. It is recommended to contact MOS for the software loads as described in Appendix J
- Initial installation of DSR software. Refer to [1]
- SDS upgrade. Refer to [2]

1.2 References

- [1] *DSR 7.1/7.2 Cloud Installation Guide, E64814, Oracle*
- [2] *SDS Upgrade document. E60672, Oracle*
- [3] *Maintenance Window Analysis Tool CGBU_010314, Oracle*
- [4] *IPFE Feature Activation and Configuration, CGBU_694, Oracle*
- [5] *DSR 6.0 to 7.0 Migration – IPFE Aspects, CGBU_770, Oracle*
- [6] *Fast Deployment and Configuration Tool Technical Reference, CGBU_ENG_24_2353, Oracle*
- [7] *Cloud DSR 7.2 Disaster Recovery Guide, E64815, Oracle*

1.3 Acronyms

Table 1: Acronyms

| | |
|--------|-------------------------------------|
| CD-ROM | Compact Disc Read-only Media |
| CPA | Charging Proxy Agent |
| CSV | Comma-separated Values |
| cSBR | Charging Session Binding Repository |
| DA | Diameter Agent |
| DA MP | Diameter Agent Message Processor |
| DB | Database |
| DP | Data Processor |
| DR | Disaster Recovery |
| DSR | Diameter Signaling Router |
| FABR | Full Address Based Resolution |
| FOA | First Office Application |

Table 1: Acronyms

| | |
|------|--|
| GA | General Availability |
| GPS | Global Product Solutions |
| GUI | Graphical User Interface |
| HA | High Availability |
| IDIH | Integrated Diameter Intelligence Hub |
| IMI | Internal Management Interface |
| IP | Internet Protocol |
| IPM | Initial Product Manufacture |
| IPFE | IP Front End |
| ISO | ISO 9660 file system (when used in the context of this document) |
| LA | Limited Availability |
| MOP | Method of Procedure |
| MP | Message Processing or Message Processor |
| MW | Maintenance Window |
| NE | Network Element |
| NOAM | Network OAM |
| OAM | Operations, Administration and Maintenance |
| OFCS | Offline Charging Solution |
| PCA | Policy and Charging Agent (formerly known as PDRA) |
| PDRA | Policy Diameter Routing Agent |
| SBR | Session Binding Repository |
| SDS | Subscriber Database Server |
| SOAM | System OAM |
| TPD | Tekelec Platform Distribution |
| UI | User Interface |
| VIP | Virtual IP |
| VPN | Virtual Private Network |
| XMI | External Management Interface |
| XSI | External Signaling Interface |

1.4 Terminology

This section describes terminology as it is used within this document.

Table 2: Terminology

| | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| Upgrade | The process of converting an application from its current release on a system to a newer release. |
| Major Upgrade | An upgrade from one DSR release to another DSR release. E.g. DSR 7.0.1 to DSR 7.1.x or 7.2. |
| Incremental Upgrade | An upgrade within a given DSR release e.g. 7.1.x to 7.1.y. |
| Release | Release is any particular distribution of software that is different from any other distribution. |
| Single Server Upgrade | The process of converting a DSR 7.0.1 server from its current release to a newer release. |
| Backout | The process of converting a single DSR 7.1.x or 7.2 server to a prior version. This could be performed due to failure in Single Server Upgrade or the upgrade cannot be accepted for some other reason. Backout is a user initiated process. |
| Rollback | Automatic recovery procedure that puts a server into its pre-upgrade status. This procedure occurs automatically during upgrade if there is a failure. |
| Source release | Software release to upgrade from. |
| Primary NOAM Network Element | The network element that contains the Active and Standby NOAM servers in a DSR. In a 2-tier DSR, there is only a single network element, and it contains the NOAMs and all MPs. So this single network element is both the primary NOAM network element and the signaling network element. In a 3-tier DSR, there are more possible combinations. |
| Signaling Network Element | Any network element that contains DA-MPs (and possibly other C-level servers), thus carrying out Diameter signaling functions. In a 2-tier DSR, the signaling network element and the “site” are one and the same. In a 3-tier DSR, each SOAM pair and its associated C-level servers are considered a single signaling network element. And if a signaling network element includes a server that hosts the NOAMs, that signaling network element is also considered to be the primary NOAM network element. |
| Site | Physical location where one or more network elements reside. For a 2-tier DSR, the site is defined by the NOAM. For a 3-tier DSR, the site is defined by the SOAM. |
| Target release | Software release to upgrade to. |
| Health Check | Procedure used to determine the health and status of the DSR’s internal network. This includes status displayed from the DSR GUI. This can be observed pre-server upgrade, in-progress server upgrade, and post-server upgrade. |
| Upgrade Ready | State that allows for graceful upgrade of a server without degradation of service. It is a state that a server is required to be in before upgrading a server. The state is defined by the following attributes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server is Forced Standby • Server is Application Disabled (signaling servers will not process any traffic) |
| UI | User interface. Platcfg UI refers specifically to the Platform Configuration Utility User Interface which is a text-based user interface. |
| 1+1 | Setup with one Active and one Standby server. |
| N+0 | Setup with N active DA-MP(s) but no standby DA-MP. |
| NOAM | Network OAM for DSR. |
| SOAM | System OAM for DSR. |
| Migration | Changing policy and resources after upgrade (if required). For example, changing from 1+1 (Active/Standby) policy to N+ 0 (Multiple Active) policies. |

| | |
|-------------------------|--|
| Software Centric | The business practice of delivering an Oracle software product, while relying upon the customer to procure the requisite hardware components. Oracle provides the hardware specifications, but does not provide the hardware, and is not responsible for hardware installation, configuration, or maintenance. |
| Enablement | The business practice of providing support services (hardware, software, documentation, etc) that enable a 3 rd party entity to install, configuration, and maintain Oracle products for Oracle customers. |

1.5 How to Use this Document

When executing the procedures in this document, there are a few key points which help to ensure that the user understands procedure convention. These points are:

- 1) Before beginning a procedure, completely read the instructional text (it will appear immediately after the Section heading for each procedure) and all associated procedural WARNINGS or NOTES.
- 2) Before execution of a STEP within a procedure, completely read the left and right columns including any STEP specific WARNINGS or NOTES.
- 3) If a procedural STEP fails to execute successfully or fails to receive the desired output, STOP. It is recommended to contact MOS for assistance, as described in Appendix J, before attempting to continue.

1.5.1 Executing Procedures

Figure 1 below shows an example of a procedural step used in this document.

- Each step has a checkbox that the user should check-off to keep track of the progress of the procedure.
- Any sub-steps within a step are referred to as Step X.Y. The example in Figure 1 shows Step 1 and Step 2.1 to Step 2.6.
- The title box describes the operations to be performed during that step
- GUI menu items, action links and buttons to be clicked on are in **bold Arial** font.
- GUI fields and values to take note of during a step are in **bold Arial** font.
- Each command that the user enters, as well as any response output, is formatted in 10-point **bold Courier** font.

Figure 1. Example Procedure steps used in this document

| | | |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | Change directory | Change to the backout directory. \$ cd /var/TKLC/backout |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | Verify Network Element data | View the Network Elements configuration data; verify the data; save and print report. 1. Select Configuration > Network Elements to view Network Elements Configuration screen. |

1.6 Recommendations

This section provides some recommendations to consider when preparing to execute the procedures in this document.

1.6.1 Frequency of Health Checks

The user may execute the **Perform Health Check** or **View Logs** steps repetitively between procedures during the upgrade process. It is not recommended to do this between steps in a procedure, unless there is a failure to troubleshoot.

1.6.2 Large Installation Support

For large systems containing multiple Signaling Network Elements, it is impossible to upgrade multi-site systems in a single maintenance window.

1.6.3 Logging of Upgrade Activities

It is a best practice to use a terminal session with logging enabled to capture user command activities and output during the upgrade procedures. These can be used for analysis in the event of issues encountered during the activity. These logs should be saved off line at the completion of the activity.

1.7 Warnings, Cautions, and Notes

This section presents notices of warnings and cautions that directly relate to the success of the upgrade. It is imperative that each of these notices be read and understood before continuing with the upgrade. If there are any conflicts, issues, or questions related to these notices, it is recommended to contact MOS as directed in Appendix J before starting the upgrade.

1.7.1 PCA/PDRA Application – PCRF Pooling Migration Precheck

If the PCA application or the PDRA application has been activated in the source release, PCRF Pooling **MUST** be enabled, and the PCRF Pooling Migration **MUST** be completed prior to the start of a major upgrade to DSR 7.1.x or 7.2.



!! WARNING!!

THE UPGRADE TO RELEASE 7.1.x / 7.2 WILL FAIL IF PCRF POOLING MIGRATION IS NOT COMPLETED WHEN THE PCA/PDRA APPLICATION IS ENABLED

The PCRF Pooling Migration Tool is provided to determine the status of the PCRF Pooling Migration. The tool has options to determine if the migration is complete, to indicate if upgrade is allowed or not allowed, and to estimate the time required to complete the Pooling migration.

The upgrade to DSR 7.1.x / 7.2 CANNOT be scheduled until the PCRF Pooling Migration Tool is run to determine the status of the migration. Pooling migration can take days or weeks to complete, depending on the PCA/PDRA configuration and when PCRF Pooling was enabled.

When the tool determines that pooling migration is completed, a flag is set internally, which will allow the upgrade to proceed.

Refer to Appendix C: PCRF Pooling Migration Check for instructions on how to execute the PCRF Pooling Migration check.

The PCRF Pooling Migration Check is not required in the following scenarios:

1. The PCA/PDRA application has not been activated
2. When upgrading from release 7.1.x to 7.2 (in this case, pooling migration has already completed)
3. DSR 7.1.x / 7.2 incremental upgrade.

1.7.2 Review Release Notes

Before starting the upgrade, it is recommended to review the Release Notes for the target release to understand the functional differences and possible traffic impacts of the upgrade.

2 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

This document defines the step-by-step actions performed to execute an upgrade of an in-service DSR from the source release to the target release. A major upgrade advances the DSR from source release 7.0.1 to target release 7.1.x or 7.2, or from source release 7.1.x to target release 7.2. An incremental upgrade advances the DSR from an earlier DSR 7.1.x/7.2 source release to a more recent 7.1.x/7.2 target release.

Note that for any incremental upgrade, the source and target releases must have the same value of “x”. For example, advancing a DSR from 7.1.1.0.0-7.1.1.0 to 7.1.1.0.0-7.1.2.0 is an incremental upgrade. But advancing a DSR running a 7.0.1 release to a 7.1.x or 7.2 target release constitutes a major upgrade.

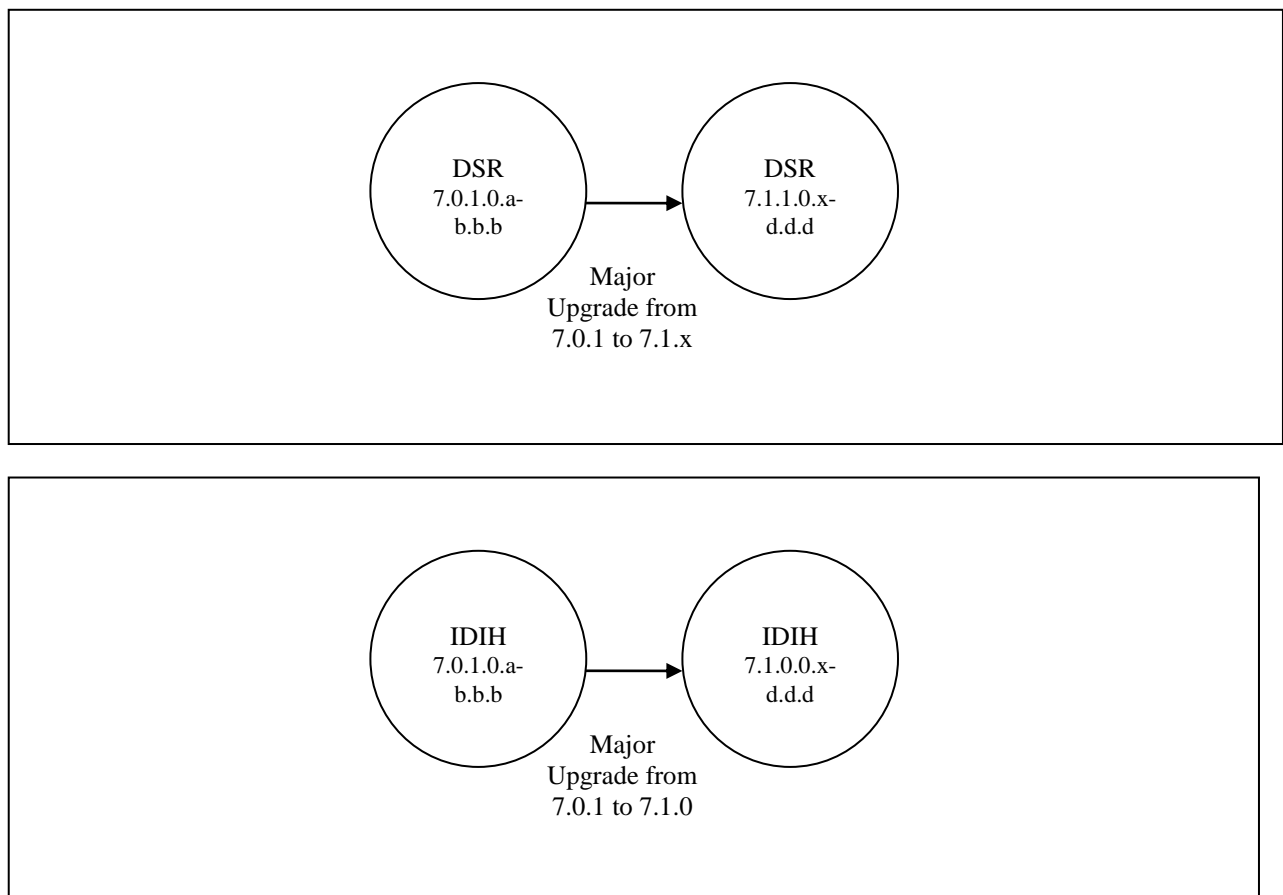
2.1 Supported Upgrade Paths

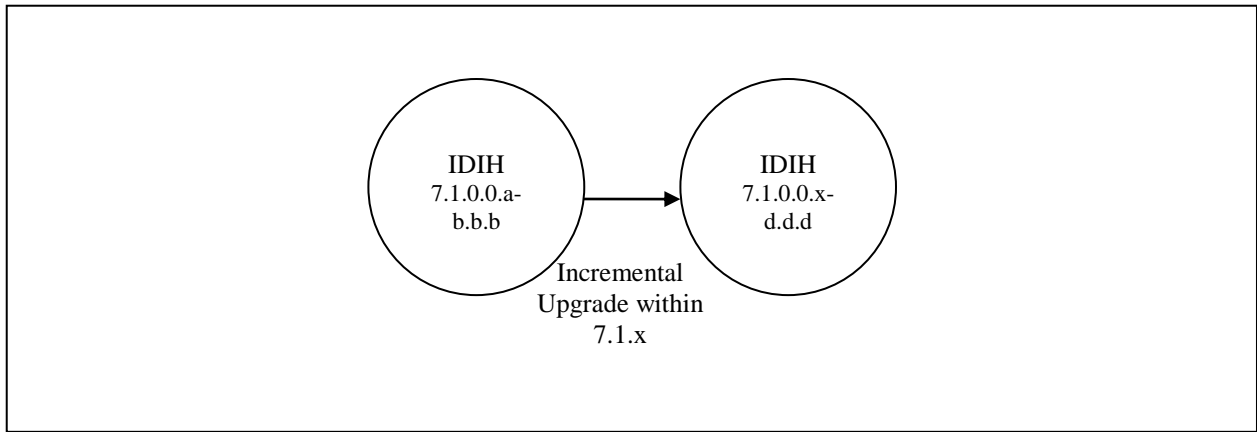
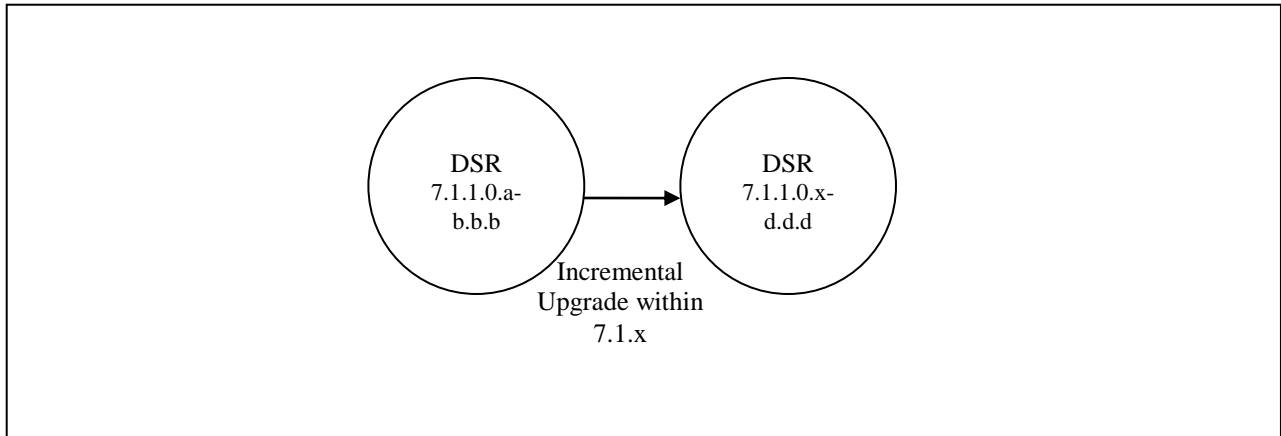
2.1.1 Supported Upgrade Paths to 7.1.x

The supported paths to upgrade to a DSR 7.1.x target release are shown in Figure 2 below.

NOTE: DSR upgrade procedures assume the source and target releases are the GA or LA builds in the upgrade path.

Figure 2. DSR 7.1.x Supported Upgrade Paths



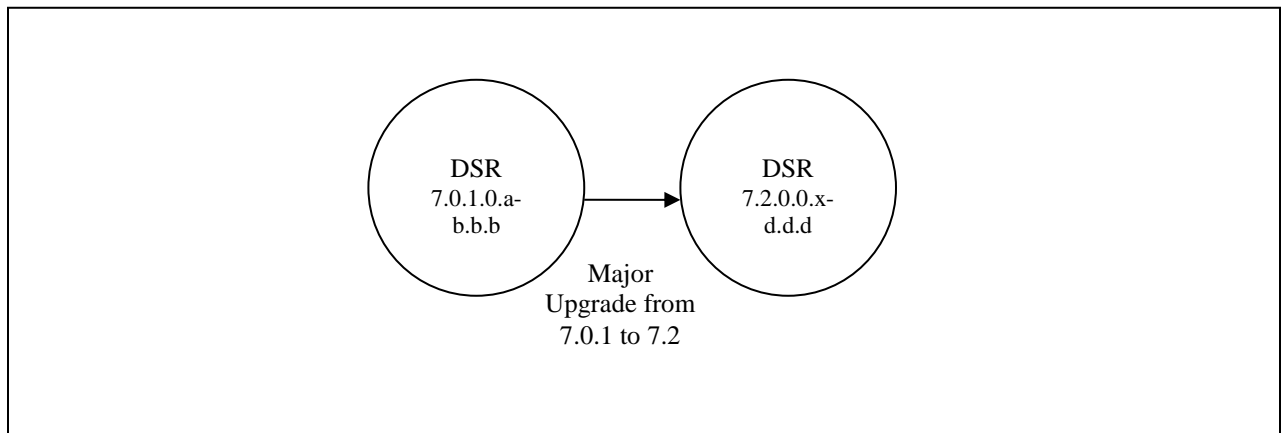


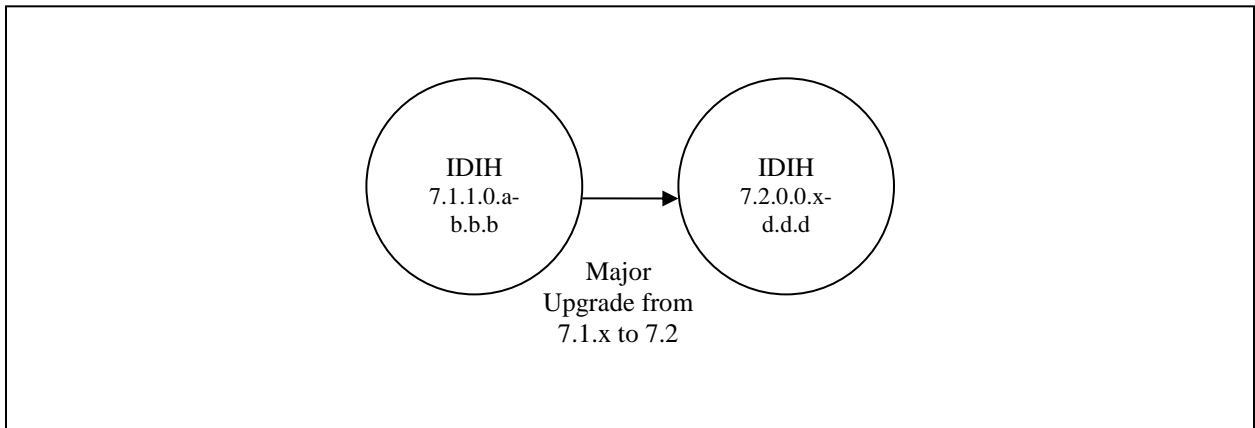
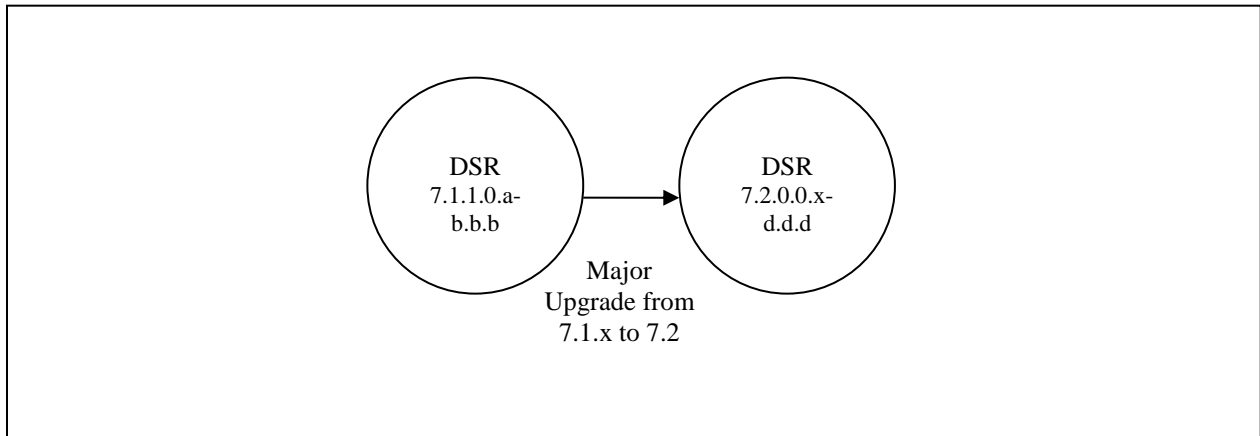
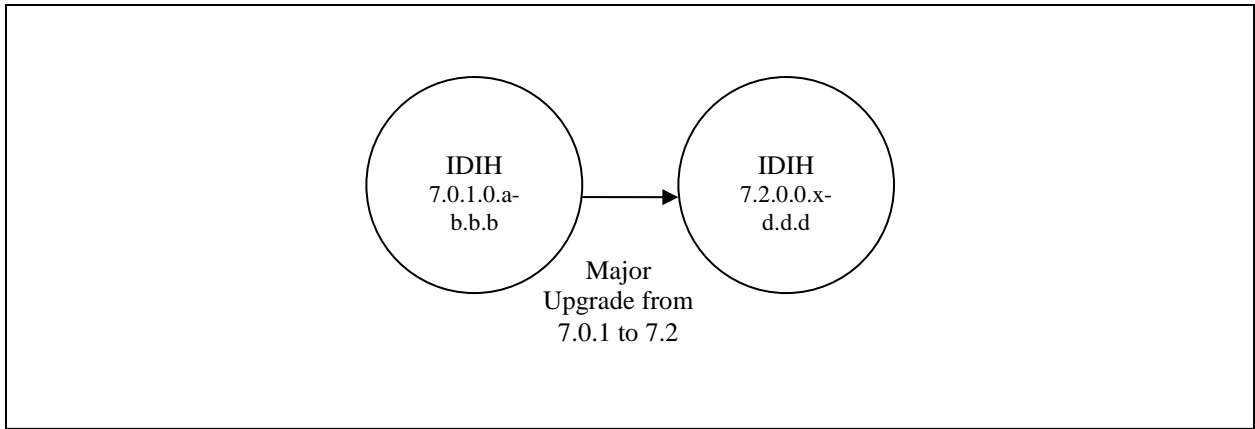
2.1.2 Supported Upgrade Paths to 7.2

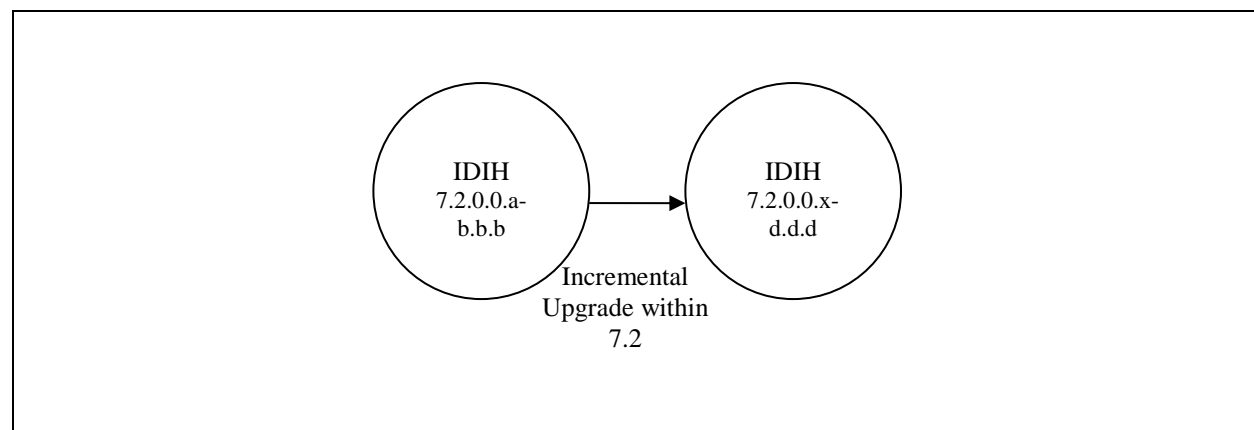
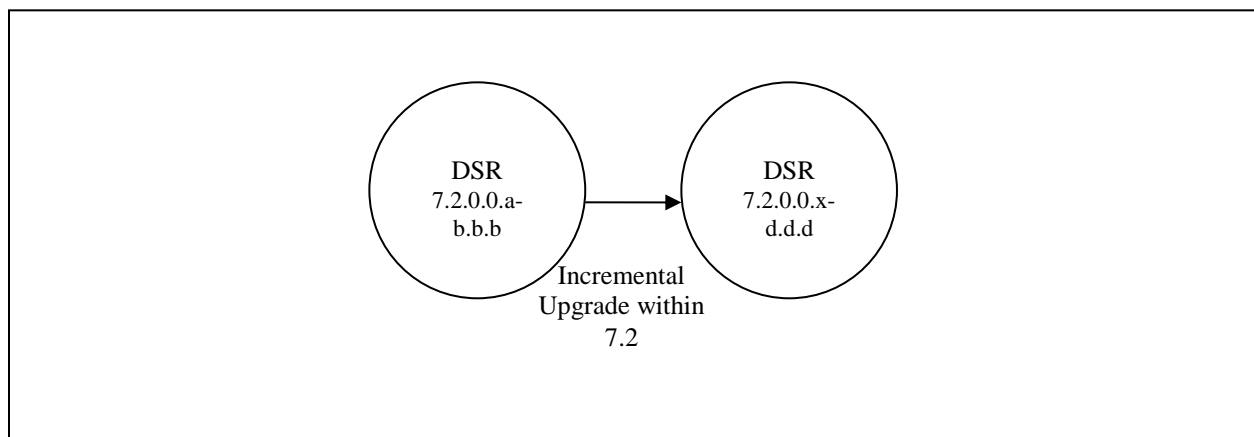
The supported paths to upgrade to a DSR 7.2 target release are shown in Figure 3 below.

NOTE: DSR upgrade procedures assume the source and target releases are the GA or LA builds in the upgrade path.

Figure 3. DSR 7.2 Supported Upgrade Paths







2.2 Geo-diverse Site (Active/Standby/Spare PCA configuration)

With a Geo-Diverse site, the upgrade of the SOAM Active/Standby servers must also include an upgrade of the Spare SOAM at the geo-redundant site, in the same maintenance window. The PCA upgrade procedure in this document is specific to a configuration that includes Geo-Diversity (Section 5.5).

2.3 SDS Upgrade

It is recommended to upgrade the SDS topology (NOAMs, SOAMs, DPs) before the DSR topology. If this is not possible, then comAgent backward compatibility between the target and the source releases must be verified. comAgent is the process used to facilitate communication (Client/Server) between the SDS DP and the DA-MP on the DSR.

2.4 Traffic Management during Upgrade

Upgrade of NOAM and SOAM servers is not expected to affect traffic handling at the DA-MPs and other traffic-handling servers.

For the upgrade of the DA-MPs, traffic connections are disabled only for the servers being upgraded. The remaining servers continue to service traffic.

2.5 Automated Server Group Upgrade

The Automated Server Group (ASG) upgrade feature allows the user to automatically upgrade all of the servers in a server group simply by specifying a set of controlling parameters.

The purpose of ASG is to simplify and automate segments of the DSR upgrade. The DSR has long supported the ability to select multiple servers for upgrade. In doing so however, it was incumbent on the user to determine ahead of time which servers could be upgraded in parallel, considering traffic impact. If the servers were not carefully chosen, the upgrade could adversely impact system operations.

When a server group is selected for upgrade, ASG will upgrade each of the servers serially, or in parallel, or a combination of both, while enforcing a minimum service availability. The number of servers in the server group that are upgraded in parallel is user selectable. The procedures in this document provide the detailed steps for when to use ASG, as well as the appropriate parameters that should be selected for each server group type.

ASG is the default upgrade method for most server group types associated with the DSR. However, there are some instances in which the manual upgrade method is utilized. In all cases where ASG is used, procedures for a manual upgrade are also provided. **Note that in order to use ASG on a server group, no servers in that server group can be already upgraded – either by ASG or manually.**

DSR continues to support the parallel upgrade of server groups, including any combination of automated and manual upgrade methods.

2.5.1 Pausing, Restarting, and Canceling Automated Server Group Upgrade

When a server group is upgraded using ASG, each server within that server group is automatically prepared for upgrade, upgraded to the target release, and returned to service on the target release. Once an ASG upgrade is initiated, the task responsible for controlling the sequencing of servers entering upgrade can be paused, restarted, and even canceled from the **Status & Manage > Active Tasks** screen (Figure 4).

For example, in Figure 4, task ID #1 is an ASG task, while task ID #2 is the corresponding individual server upgrade task. When the ASG task is selected (highlighted in green), the Cancel and Pause buttons are enabled. When the ASG task is paused, the Restart and Cancel buttons are enabled. Pausing or canceling the ASG task affects only the ASG task. It has no effect on the individual server upgrade tasks that were started by the ASG task (i.e., task ID #2 in Figure 4).

When the ASG task is paused, it can be restarted by selecting the task and clicking the **Restart** button. When restarted, the ASG task will resume the process of initiating upgrade on the server group using the parameters that were initially selected.

Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Tasks -> Active Tasks

| ID | Name | Status | Start Time | Update Time |
|----|--|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 2 | SO1 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade) | running | 2015-03-02 11:44:42 EST | 2015-03-02 11:54:00 EST |
| 1 | SO_SG Server Group Upgrade | running | 2015-03-02 11:44:32 EST | 2015-03-02 11:47:47 EST |
| 0 | Pre-upgrade full backup | completed | 2015-02-27 19:59:06 EST | 2015-02-27 20:00:46 EST |

Figure 4. Active Tasks Screen

In the event that a server fails upgrade, that server will automatically roll back to the previous release in preparation for backout_restore and fault isolation. Any other servers in that server group that are in the process of upgrading will continue to upgrade to completion. However, the ASG task itself will pause and no other servers in that server group will be upgraded. Pausing the ASG task provides an opportunity for troubleshooting to correct the problem. Once the problem is corrected, the server group upgrade can resume by restarting the paused ASG task. Note that the failed server will NOT be selected for upgrade upon resuming the ASG task.

If the user chooses to cancel the ASG task, the task will stop running and cannot be restarted. This means that the automated upgrade option will no longer be available for that server group. Any remaining servers in the affected server group must be upgraded manually.

3 UPGRADE PLANNING AND PRE-UPGRADE PROCEDURES

This section contains all information necessary to prepare for and execute an upgrade. The materials required to perform an upgrade are described, as are pre-upgrade procedures that should be run to ensure the system is fully ready for upgrade. Then, the actual procedures for each supported upgrade path are given.

There are overview tables throughout this section that help plan the upgrade and estimate how long it will take to perform various actions. The stated time durations for each step or group of steps are estimates only. Do not use the overview tables to execute any actions on the system. Only the procedures should be used when performing upgrade actions, beginning with Procedure 1. .

3.1 Required Materials and Information

The following materials and information are needed to execute an upgrade:

- Target-release application ISO image file or target-release application media.
- The capability to log into the DSR 7.x Network OAM servers with Administrator privileges.
NOTE: All logins into the DSR NOAM servers are made via the External Management VIP unless otherwise stated.
- User logins, passwords, IP addresses and other administration information. See [Table 3].
- VPN access to the customer's network is required if that is the only method to log into the OAM servers.

3.1.1 Application ISO Image File / Media

Obtain a copy of the target release ISO image file or media. This file is necessary to perform the upgrade.

The DSR ISO image file name will be in the following format (version will change from release to release):

`DSR-7.1.1.0.0_71.28.0-x86_64.iso`

NOTE: Prior to the execution of this upgrade procedure it is assumed that the DSR ISO image file has already been delivered to the customer's premises. The ISO image file must reside on the local workstation used to perform the upgrade, and any user performing the upgrade must have access to the ISO image file. If the user performing the upgrade is at a remote location, it is assumed the ISO file is already available before starting the upgrade procedure.

The ISO will be deployed as part of the pre-upgrade activities in Section 3.3.

3.1.2 Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses

Table 3 identifies the information that will be called out in the upgrade procedures, such as server IP addresses and login credentials. For convenience, space is provided in Table 3 for recording the values, or the information can be obtained by other means. This step ensures that the necessary administration information is available prior to an upgrade.

Consider the sensitivity of the information recorded in this table. While all of the information in the table is required to complete the upgrade, there may be security policies in place that prevent the actual recording of this information in hard-copy form.

Table 3: Logins, Passwords and Server IP Addresses

| Item | Description | Recorded Value |
|------------------------------|--|----------------|
| Target Release | Target DSR upgrade release | |
| Credentials | GUI Admin Username ¹ | |
| | GUI Admin Password | |
| | DSR admusr Password ² | |
| VPN Access Details | Customer VPN information (if needed) | |
| NOAM | XMI VIP address ² | |
| | NOAM 1 XMI IP Address | |
| | NOAM 2 XMI IP Address | |
| SOAM | XMI VIP address | |
| | SOAM 1 XMI IP Address (Site 1) | |
| | SOAM 2 XMI IP Address (Site 1) | |
| | PCA (DSR) Spare System OAM&P server – Site 1 Spare in Site 2, XMI IP Address | |
| | SOAM 1 XMI IP Address (Site 2) | |
| | SOAM 2 XMI IP Address (Site 2) | |
| | PCA (DSR) Spare System OAM&P server – Site 2 Spare in Site 1, XMI IP Address | |
| Binding SBR Server Groups | Binding SBR SR1 Server Group Servers (Site 1) | |
| | Binding SBR SR2 Server Group Servers (Site 1) | |
| | Binding SBR SR3 Server Group Servers (Site 1) | |
| | Binding SBR SR4 Server Group Servers (Site 1) | |
| PCA MP Server Group | PCA MP Server Group Servers (Site 1) | |
| | PCA MP Server Group Servers (Site 1) | |
| IPFE Server Groups(For PDRA) | PCA IPFE A1 Server Group Server (Site 1) | |
| | PCA IPFE A 2 Server Group Server (Site 1) | |
| | PCA IPFE B 1 Server Group Server (Site 1) | |
| | PCA IPFE B 2 Server Group Server (Site 1) | |
| Binding SBR Server Groups | Binding SBR SR1 Server Group Servers (Site 2) | |
| | Binding SBR SR2 Server Group Servers (Site 2) | |
| | Binding SBR SR3 Server Group Servers (Site 2) | |
| | Binding SBR SR4 Server Group Servers (Site 2) | |

¹ NOTE: The user must have administrator privileges. This means the user belongs to the **admin** group in Group Administration.

² NOTE: All logins into the NOAM servers are made via the External Management VIP unless otherwise stated.

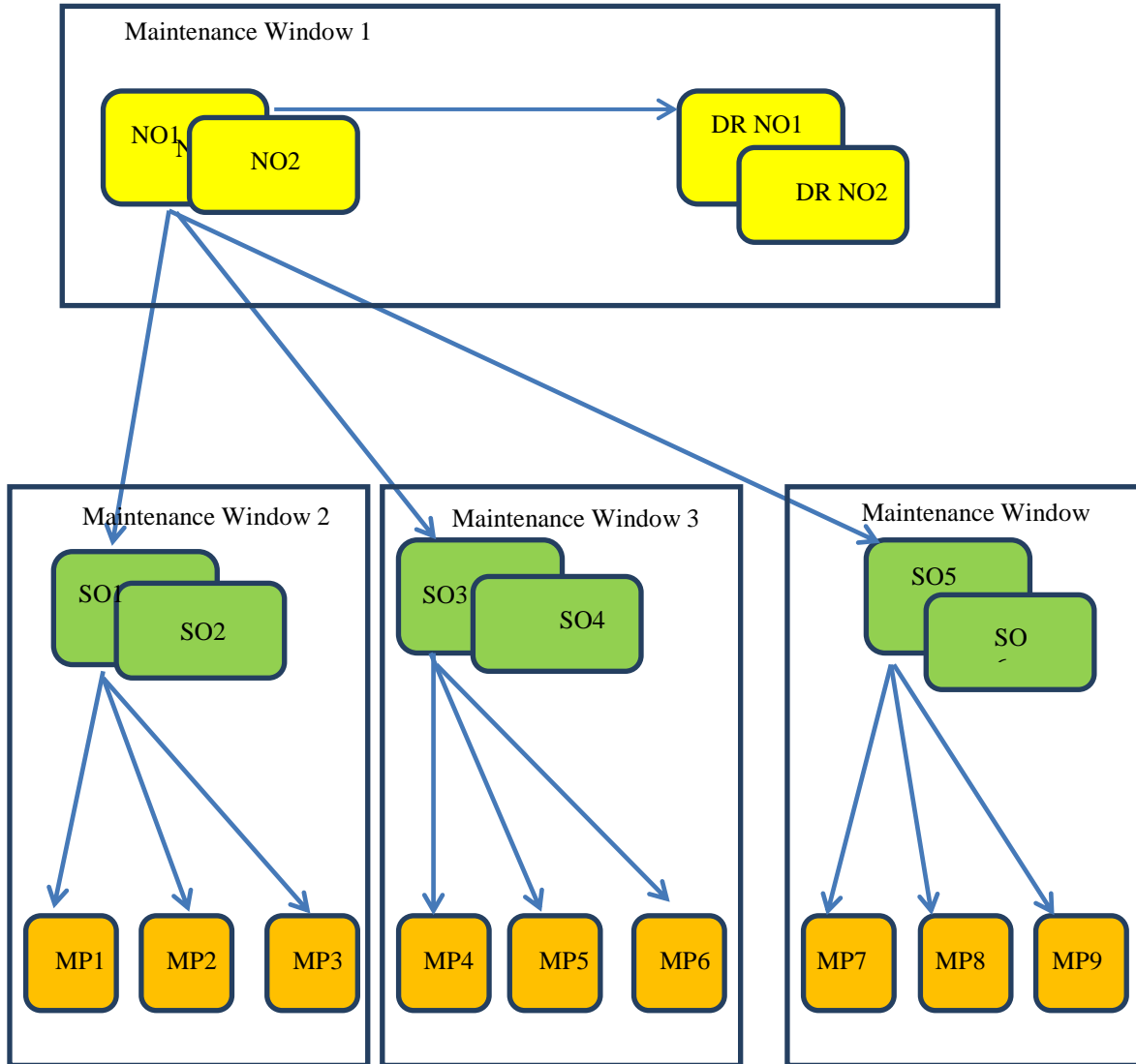
| | | |
|------------------------------|---|--|
| PCA MP Server Group | PCA MP Server Group Servers (Site 2) | |
| IPFE Server Groups (For PCA) | PCA IPFE A1 Server Group Server (Site 2) | |
| | PCA IPFE A 2 Server Group Server (Site 2) | |
| | PCA IPFE B 1 Server Group Server (Site 2) | |
| | PCA IPFE B 2 Server Group Server (Site 2) | |
| SS7-IWF Server Groups | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| | SS7-IWF Server Group Server | |
| Software | Target Release Number | |
| | ISO Image (.iso) file name | |
| Misc. ³ | Miscellaneous additional data | |

³ As instructed by Oracle CGBU Customer Service.

3.2 Plan Upgrade Maintenance Windows

This section provides a high-level checklist to aid in tracking individual server upgrades. The servers are grouped by maintenance window, and it is expected that all servers in a group can be successfully upgraded in a single maintenance window. Use this high-level checklist together with the detailed procedures that appear later in this document.

Figure 5. Upgrade Maintenance Windows for 3-Tier Upgrade



 **!! WARNING!! MATED SOAM SITES MUST BE UPGRADED IN SEPARATE MAINTENANCE WINDOWS**

3.2.1 Calculating Maintenance Windows Required

The number of maintenance windows required for DSR setup and upgrade can be calculated by using the Maintenance Window Analysis Tool (see ref [3]).

This Excel spreadsheet takes setup details as input from the user and accordingly calculates the number of maintenance windows required for upgrade. The spreadsheet also specifies, in detail, which servers need to be upgraded in which maintenance window. Complete DSR upgrade maintenance window details and timings can be found in Reference [3]. Please see the instructions tab of the spreadsheet for more information and details.

3.2.2 Maintenance Window 1 (NOAM Site Upgrades)

During the first maintenance window, the NOAM servers are upgraded.

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>Maintenance Window 1 (NOAM Sites)</p> <p>Date: _____</p> <p>NOTE 1: <i>The NE Name may be viewed from the DSR NOAM GUI under [Main Menu → Configuration → Network Elements].</i></p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Record the Site NE Name of the DSR NOAM to be upgraded during Maintenance Window 1 in the space provided below:2. “Check off” the associated Check Box as upgrade is completed for each server. <p><input type="checkbox"/> Primary Standby NOAM (<i>Guest</i>): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Primary Active NOAM (<i>Guest</i>): _____</p> |
|---|---|

3.2.3 Maintenance Window 2 and beyond (SOAM Site Upgrades)

During Maintenance Window 2, all servers associated with the first SOAM Site are upgraded. All servers associated with the second SOAM Site are upgraded during Maintenance Window 3. For DSRs configured with multiple mated-pair Sites, or DSRs having multiple, distinct Sites (e.g. geo-redundant PCA installations), the following form should be copied and used for the subsequent SOAM Site upgrades.



It is strongly recommended that Mated pair SOAM Sites are NOT upgraded in the same Maintenance Window.

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>Maintenance Window (SOAM Sites)</p> <p>Date: _____</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Record the Site NE Name of the DSR SOAM and the MP(s) to be upgraded during Maintenance Window 2 in the space provided. 2. “Check off” the associated Check Box as upgrade is completed for each server. <p>SOAM Site: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SOAM1 (Guest): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SOAM2 (Guest): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SOAM (Guest): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SOAM (Guest): _____</p> |
| | <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP1: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP2: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP3: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP4: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP5: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP6: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP7: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP8: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP9: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP10: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP11: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP12: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP13: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP14: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP15: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> DA-MP16: _____</p> |

| | |
|--|--|
| | <input type="checkbox"/> IPFE1: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> IPFE2: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> IPFE3: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> IPFE4: _____ |
| | <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP1: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP2: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP3: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP4: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP5: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP6: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP7: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> SS7-MP8: _____ |

| | |
|--|---|
| | <p>Binding Server Group 1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Binding Server Group 8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> |
|--|---|

| | |
|--|---|
| | <p>Session Server Group 1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> <p>Session Server Group 8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Standby SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Active SBR: _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR1 (Mate): _____</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Spare SBR2 (Mate): _____ (If equipped)</p> |
|--|---|

3.3 Prerequisite Procedures

The pre-upgrade procedures shown in the following table are executed outside a maintenance window, if desired. These steps have no effect on the live system and can save upon maintenance window time, if executed before the start of the Maintenance Window.

Table 4: Prerequisite Procedures Overview

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|---|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|----------------------|
| | This Step | Cum. | | |
| Procedure 1 | 0:10-0:30 | 0:10-0:30 | Required Materials Check | None |
| Procedure 2 | 0:20-0:30 | 0:30-1:00 | Verification of Configuration Data | None |
| Procedure 3 or Procedure 4 or Procedure 5 | 0:45-2:00 0:45-1:00 0:15-0:20 | 1:15-3:00 1:15-2:00 0:45-1:20 | Data Collection for Source Release 7.0.1 Data Collection for Source Release 7.1.x Data Collection for Source Release 7.2 | None None None |
| Procedure 6 | 0:15-3:00 | 1:00-6:00 | DSR ISO Administration | None |
| Procedure 7 or Procedure 8 | 0:10-2:00 | 1:10-8:00 | Full Backup of DB Rbun Environment for Release 7.0.1 or Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 7.1.x and later | None None |
| Procedure 9 | 0:03-2:30 | 1:13-10:30 | Network Interface Workaround | None |

* ISO transfers to the target systems may require a significant amount of time depending on the number of systems and the speed of the network. These factors may significantly affect total time needed, and may require the scheduling of multiple maintenance windows to complete the entire upgrade procedure. The ISO transfers to the target systems should be performed prior to, and outside of, the scheduled maintenance window. Schedule the required maintenance windows accordingly before proceeding.

3.3.1 Hardware Upgrade Preparation

There is no hardware preparation necessary when upgrading to DSR release 7.1.x/7.2.

3.3.2 Required Materials Check

This procedure verifies that all required materials needed to perform an upgrade have been collected and recorded.

Procedure 1. Required Materials Check

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure verifies that all required materials are present. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| | 1 | Verify all required materials are present <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | 2 | Verify all administration data needed during upgrade <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | 3 | Contact MOS <input type="checkbox"/> |
| | | Materials are listed in Section 3.1: Required Materials. Verify required materials are present. |
| | | Double-check that all information in Section 3.2 is filled-in and accurate. |
| | | It is recommended to contact MOS and inform them of plans to upgrade this system. See Appendix J for these instructions. Note that obtaining a new online support account can take up to 48 hours. |
| <i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i> | | |

3.3.3 Data Collection - Verification of Global and Site Configuration Data

The procedures in this section are part of Software Upgrade Preparation and are used to collect data required for network analysis, Disaster Recovery, and upgrade verification. Data is collected from both the Active NOAM and various other servers at each site.

3.3.3.1 Verification of Configuration Data

This procedure checks the configuration data of the system and servers to ensure a successful upgrade.

Procedure 2: Verification of Configuration Data

| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure checks the configuration data and server status.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|----------------------------|----------|---------------------|--|--|--|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|-----------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------|-------------------|-----|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------|-------------------|
| <p>1</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Verify that the Upgrade path to the target release is supported as documented in Section 2.1 (Supported Upgrade Paths). 3. Select the NOAM Server Group and verify the Application Version <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="6" style="text-align: left;">NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl Max HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p> </div> | NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | | | | | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Backup Needed Norm | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | NO2 | Backup Needed Norm | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 |
| NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Backup Needed Norm | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Backup Needed Norm | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>2</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>Check if the setup has customer supplied Apache certificate installed and protected with a passphrase.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to login to the Active NOAM <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> (Answer 'yes' if you are prompted to confirm the identity of the server.) 2. cd to /etc/httpd/conf.d and open the file named ssl.conf. 3. Locate the line beginning with the phrase "SSLCertificateFile" 4. The path that follows "SSLCertificateFile" is the location of the Apache certificate. If the path is /usr/TKLC/appworks/etc/ssl/server.crt, then the certificate is supplied by Oracle and no further action is required. Continue with the next procedure. 5. If the path is anything other than /usr/TKLC/appworks/etc/ssl/server.crt, then a customer-supplied Apache certificate is likely installed. Rename the certificate, but note the original certificate pathname for use in Section 4.4. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

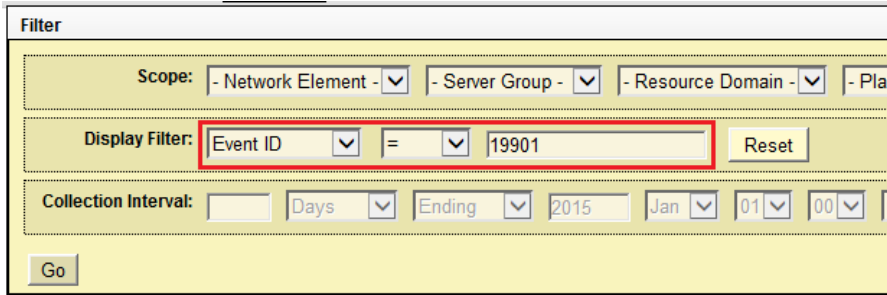
3.3.3.2 Data Collection for Source Release 7.0.1

This procedure collects and archives system status data for analysis. Perform this procedure only if the source release is 7.0.1.

Procedure 3: Data Collection for Source Release 7.0.1

| STEP # | This procedure retrieves and retains system status data for analysis and future use. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE | |
|--------|--|---|
| 1 | Active SOAM CLI <input type="checkbox"/> Database consistency check | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems - or putty if running on Windows) to log into the Active SOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM_VIP></pre> Check the transport connections tables. Enter the following commands to count the number of entries in the ConnectionAdmin and TransportConnection tables. <pre>igt -zhp ConnectionAdmin wc -l igt -zhp TransportConnection wc -l</pre> Sample output: <pre>[admusr@EVO-SO-1 ~]\$ igt -zhp ConnectionAdmin wc -l 7196 [admusr@EVO-SO-1 ~]\$ igt -zhp TransportConnection wc -l 7196</pre> If the entry counts match, proceed to the next step. <p style="color: red;">If the ConnectionAdmin table entry count does not match the TransportConnection table entry count, DO NOT PROCEED WITH THE UPGRADE. It is recommended to consult with MOS before continuing.</p> |
| 2 | Server CLI: <input type="checkbox"/> Verify uptime for each server in the topology. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems - or putty if running on windows) to login to each physical server in the topology using the server XMI IP Address. <pre>ssh admusr@<target_server_XMI_IP></pre> (Answer 'yes' if you are prompted to confirm the identity of the server.) Execute the "uptime" command: <pre>[admusr@ipfe-freeport-a1 ~]\$ uptime 02:02:49 up 27 days, 6:48, 1 user, load average:0.87,0.99,0.83 [admusr@ipfe-freeport-a1 ~]\$</pre> Record the hostname of any server with an "uptime" value > 200 days. Inform the customer that a "Cold Reboot" will be required for all servers with an "uptime" value > 200 days prior to beginning any upgrade activity. <p>NOTE: This is required response due to Red Hat Bug 765720. It is recommended to contact MOS if instruction is needed on how to gracefully perform a "Cold Reboot".</p> |

Procedure 3: Data Collection for Source Release 7.0.1

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | Repeat Port Check | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for each SOAM site in the topology. |
| 4 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Alarm Check</p> | <p>Check for the presence of alarm 19901 – CFG-DB Validation Error.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. Click Filter to open the filter selection box. Enter the following values and click Go.  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the filter returns no results, the database is consistent; proceed to the next step. Otherwise, do not continue with the upgrade until the alarm is cleared. It is recommended to consult with MOS for guidance if the alarm does not clear within 60 minutes. |
| 5 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify IPFE Server Groups</p> | <p>Verify the IPFE Server Groups are properly configured.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Login to the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Configuration > Server Groups. Examine each IPFE Server Group. Verify that each IPFE Server Group is configured with one, and only one, IPFE server. If any IPFE Server Group contains more than one IPFE server, refer to the Server Group Configuration procedure of [4] to correct the configuration. |
| 6 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify and collect Network Element Configuration data</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Configuration > Network Elements to view Network Elements Configuration screen. Click Report at the bottom of the table to generate a report for all entries. Verify the configuration data is correct for the network. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. |
| 7 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify and collect Server Group Configuration data</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Configuration > Server Groups to view the Server Group screen. Click Report at the bottom of the table to generate a report for all entries. Verify the configuration data is correct for the network. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. |
| 8 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify and collect Server Configuration data</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Configuration > Servers to view the Server screen Click Report at the bottom of the table to generate a report for all entries. Verify the configuration data is correct for the network. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. |
| 9 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify and collect Services Configuration data</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Configuration > Services to view Services screen. Click Report at the bottom of the table to generate a report for all entries. Verify the configuration data is correct for the network. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. |

Procedure 3: Data Collection for Source Release 7.0.1

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>10</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify and collect Signaling Network Configuration data for DSR</p> | | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Configuration > Network to view the Signaling Networks. 2. Click "Report" at the bottom of the table to generate a report for all entries. 3. Verify the configuration data is correct for the network. 4. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. 5. Select Configuration > Network > Devices. 6. Click "Report All" at the bottom of the table to generate a report for all entries. 7. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. 8. Select Configuration > Network > Routes. 9. Click "Report All" at the bottom of the table to generate a report for all entries. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. |
| <p>11</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify Server Status is Normal - NOAM</p> | | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Server. The Server Status screen is displayed. 2. Verify Server Status is Normal (Norm) for Alarm (Alm), Database (DB) and Processes (Proc). 3. Do not proceed with the upgrade if any server status displayed is not Norm. 4. Do not proceed if there are any Major or Critical alarms. |
| <p>12</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Log all current alarms at NOAM.</p> | | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Alarms & Events > View Active. The Alarms & Events > View Active screen is displayed. 2. Click the Report button to generate an Alarms report. 3. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. <p>NOTE: It is not recommended to continue with the upgrade if any server status has unexpected values. An upgrade should only be executed on a server with unexpected alarms if the upgrade is specifically intended to clear those alarm(s). This would mean that the target release software contains a fix to clear the "stuck" alarm(s) and upgrading is the ONLY method to clear the alarm(s). Do not continue otherwise.</p> |
| <p>13</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>View Communication Agent status for all connections.</p> | | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Communication Agent > Maintenance > Connection Status; The Communication Agent > Connection Status screen is displayed. 2. Verify the Connection Status of each connection is InService. |
| <p>14</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>View SBR status (if equipped)</p> | | <p>View SBR status if PDRA/PCA is enabled.</p> <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1, 7.1.x:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Policy and Charging > Maintenance > SBR Status The SBR Status screen is displayed. 2. Select the Binding tab. 3. Expand each Server Group. 4. Verify Congestion Level is 'Normal' for all servers. 5. Repeat sub-steps 3 and 4 for the PDRA Mated Triplet tab. <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.2 and later:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select SBR > Maintenance > SBR Status The SBR Status screen is displayed. 2. Select the Binding tab. 3. Expand each Server Group. 4. Verify Congestion Level is 'Normal' for all servers. 5. Repeat sub-steps 3 and 4 for the PCA Mated Triplet tab |
| <p>15</p> <p>Analyze and plan MP upgrade sequence</p> | | <p>From the collected data, analyze system topology and plan for any DA-MP/IPFE/SBR/PCA which will be out-of-service during the upgrade sequence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Analyze system topology data gathered in Steps 1 through 16. 2. It is recommended to plan for any MP upgrades by consulting MOS to assess the impact of out-of-service MP servers 3. Determine the exact sequence in which MP servers will be upgraded for each site. |

3.3.3.3 Data Collection for Source Release 7.1.x

This procedure collects and archives system status data for analysis. Perform this procedure only if the source release is 7.1.x.

Procedure 4: Data Collection for Source Release 7.1.x

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure retrieves and retains system status data for analysis and future use.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| <p>1</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify IPFE Server Groups</p> | <p>Verify the IPFE Server Groups are properly configured.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Login to the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Configuration > Server Groups. 3. Examine each IPFE Server Group. Verify that each IPFE Server Group is configured with one, and only one, IPFE server. <p>If any IPFE Server Group contains more than one IPFE server, DO NOT PROCEED WITH THE UPGRADE. It is recommended to consult with MOS before continuing.</p> |
| <p>2</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Alarm Check</p> | <p>Check for the presence of alarm 19901 – CFG-DB Validation Error.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Alarms & Events > View Active. 2. Click Filter to open the filter selection box. 3. Enter the following values and click Go. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Filter</p> <p>Scope: [- Network Element -] [- Server Group -] [- Resource Domain -] [- Pla</p> <p>Display Filter: [Event ID] [=] [19901] [Reset]</p> <p>Collection Interval: [] [Days] [Ending] [2015] [Jan] [01] [00] []</p> <p>[Go]</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. If the filter returns no results, the database is consistent; proceed to the next step. Otherwise, do not proceed with the upgrade until the alarm is cleared. It is recommended to consult with MOS for guidance if the alarm does not clear within 60 minutes. |

Procedure 4: Data Collection for Source Release 7.1.x

| | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---|
| <p>3</p> <p>Verify NOAM pre-Upgrade Status</p> | <p>Active NOAM CLI:</p> | <p>Execute the following commands on the Active DSR NOAM and Active DR NOAM servers.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM CLI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the Active NOAM: <pre>ssh <NOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 3.</p> Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck preUpgradeHealthCheck</pre> <p>This command creates three files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck/ with the filename format:</p> <pre><NOserver_name> AlarmStatusReport_<date-time>.xml <NOserver_name> ServerStatusReport_<date-time>.xml <NOserver_name> _ComAgentConnStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If the system is PDRA, one additional file is generated: <pre><NOserver_name> _SBRStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> </p> If the message “Server <hostname> needs operator attention before upgrade” is output, inspect the Server Status Report to determine the reason for the message. If the following message appears in the Server Status Report, the alert can be ignored: Server <hostname> has no alarm with DB State as Normal and Process state as Kill. <p>Note: If any server status is not as expected, do not proceed with the upgrade. It is recommended to contact MOS for guidance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Keep these reports for future reference. These reports will be compared to alarm and status reports after the upgrade is complete. |
| <p>4</p> <p>Verify uptime for each server in the topology</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems - or putty if running on windows) to login to each physical server in the topology using the server XMI IP Address. <p>NOTE: The user is only required to login to the TVOE host for any OAM server (A / B level) but must log into all C level servers directly (MP, IPFE, etc.).</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<target_server_XMI_IP></pre> <p>(Answer 'yes' if you are prompted to confirm the identity of the server.)</p> Execute the “uptime” command: <pre>[admusr@ipfe-freeport-a1 ~]\$ uptime 02:02:49 up 27 days, 6:48, 1 user, load average:0.87,0.99,0.83 [admusr@ipfe-freeport-a1 ~]\$</pre> Record the hostname of any server with an “uptime” value \geq 200 days. Inform the customer that a “Cold Reboot” will be required for all servers with an “uptime” value \geq 200 days prior to beginning any upgrade activity. <p>NOTE: This is required response due to Red Hat Bug 765720. It is recommended to contact MOS if instruction is needed on how to gracefully perform a “Cold Reboot”.</p> |

Procedure 4: Data Collection for Source Release 7.1.x

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| <p>5</p> <p style="background-color: white; color: black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px auto;"></p> | <p>Active SOAM CLI:</p> <p>Database consistency check</p> | <p>Check the transport connections tables.</p> <p>From the Active SOAM CLI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to login to the Active NOAM <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> <p>(Answer 'yes' if you are prompted to confirm the identity of the server.)</p> Enter the following commands to count the number of entries in the ConnectionAdmin and TransportConnection tables. <pre>igt -zhp ConnectionAdmin wc -l igt -zhp TransportConnection wc -l</pre> <p>Sample output:</p> <pre>[admusr@EVO-SO-1 ~]\$ igt -zhp ConnectionAdmin wc -l 7196 [admusr@EVO-SO-1 ~]\$ igt -zhp TransportConnection wc -l 7196</pre> If the entry counts match, proceed to step 6. <p>If the ConnectionAdmin table entry count does not match the TransportConnection table entry count, DO NOT PROCEED WITH THE UPGRADE. It is recommended to consult with MOS before continuing.</p> |
| <p>6</p> <p style="background-color: white; color: black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px auto;"></p> | <p>Active SOAM CLI:</p> <p>Log SOAM Alarm Status</p> | <p>From the Active SOAM CLI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the Active SOAM: <pre>ssh <SOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 3.</p> Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck preUpgradeHealthCheckOnSoam</pre> <p>This command creates two files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck/ with the filename format:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_AlarmStatusReport_<date-time>.xml <SOserver_name>_ServerStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The message "FIPS integrity verification test failed" may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored. If the following message appears in the Server Status Report, the alert can be ignored: Server <hostname> has no alarm with DB State as Normal and Process state as Kill.</p> Verify all Peer MPs are available Note the number of Total Connections Established _____ Keep these reports for future reference. These reports will be compared to alarm and status reports after the upgrade is complete. |

Procedure 4: Data Collection for Source Release 7.1.x

| | | |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| 7 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Active SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>Verify PCA status (if equipped)</p> | <p>From the Active SOAM CLI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the command: <pre style="margin-left: 20px;">\$ upgradeHealthCheck pcaStatus</pre> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">This command outputs status to the screen for review.</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> 2. Verify Operational Status is ‘Available’ for all applications |
| 8 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Repeat for each Network Element</p> | <p>Repeat Steps 5 - 7 for each SOAM site in the topology.</p> |
| 9 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Analyze and plan MP upgrade sequence</p> | <p>From the collected data, analyze system topology and plan for any DA-MP/IPFE/SBR/PCA which will be out-of-service during the upgrade sequence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Analyze system topology data gathered in Section 3.3.3.1 and steps 1 through 10 of this procedure. 2. It is recommended to plan for MP upgrades by consulting MOS to assess the impact of out-of-service MP servers 3. Determine the exact sequence in which MP servers will be upgraded for each site. |

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

3.3.3.4 Data Collection for Source Release 7.2 and later

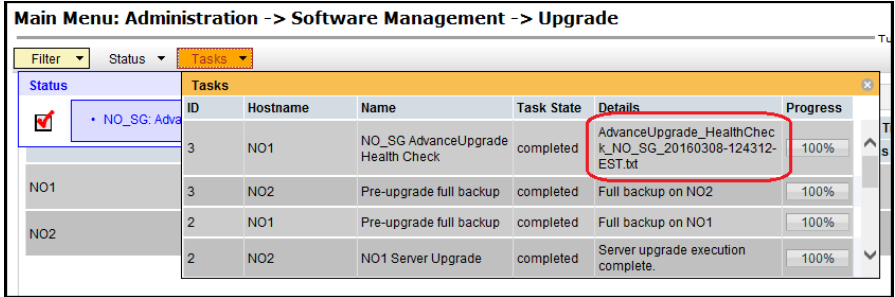
This procedure collects and archives system status data for analysis. Perform this procedure only if the source release is 7.2 or later.

Procedure 5: Data Collection for Source Release 7.2

| <p>S T E P #</p> <p>1</p> | <p>This procedure retrieves and retains system status data for analysis and future use.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|-----------------|----------|---------------------|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|-------|--------|---------------|-------|-----------------|--|------|-----|-----------|--|--|-----|-------|---------|---------------|-------|-----------------|--|------|-----|-----------|--|--|------|----------|--------|--------|-----|--------------|---|----------------------|--|--|--------------|---|----------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------|--|
| <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Initiate NOAM health check</p> | <p>This procedure will run the automated Health Checks on the Active NOAM.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade screen is displayed. 2. Select the Active NOAM. <div> <table border="1"> <caption>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>Filter</th> <th>Tasks</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO_SG</td> <td>IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</td> </tr> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl Max HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.16.5</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.16.5</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Click the Checkup button. The Upgrade [Checkup] screen is displayed. 4. In the 'Health check options' section, select the Advance Upgrade option. 5. If the ISO Administration procedure has already been performed for the target ISO, use the Upgrade ISO pulldown to select the target release ISO. Otherwise, do not select an ISO. 6. Click Ok. Control returns to the Upgrade screen. <div> <table border="1"> <caption>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</caption> <thead> <tr> <th>Info</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: NO_DSR_VM</td> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="3">Health check options</th> </tr> <tr> <td>Checkup Type</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Post Upgrade </td> <td>Upgrade health check type.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> <td>DSR-7.2.0.0_72.16.5-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | Filter | Tasks | NO_SG | IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.2.0.0-72.16.5 | | Norm | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | | NO2 | Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.2.0.0-72.16.5 | | Norm | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | | Info | Hostname | Action | Status | NO1 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: NO_DSR_VM | Health check options | | | Checkup Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Post Upgrade | Upgrade health check type. | Upgrade ISO | DSR-7.2.0.0_72.16.5-x86_64.iso | Select the desired upgrade ISO media file. |
| Filter | Tasks | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.2.0.0-72.16.5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Norm | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.2.0.0-72.16.5 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Norm | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Info | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Action | Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Health check options | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Checkup Type | <input checked="" type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Post Upgrade | Upgrade health check type. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Upgrade ISO | DSR-7.2.0.0_72.16.5-x86_64.iso | Select the desired upgrade ISO media file. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 5: Data Collection for Source Release 7.2

| | | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|---|--|
| <p>2</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Monitor health check progress</p> | <p>Monitor for the completion of the Health Check.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks dropdown to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <NOServerGroup> AdvanceUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column will display a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results. |
| <p>3</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Analyze any Health Check failure</p> | <p>If the Health Check report status is anything other than “Pass”, the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. 2. Select the file named “UpgradeHealthCheck.log” and click View. 3. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. 4. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance as described in Appendix J. |



Procedure 5: Data Collection for Source Release 7.2

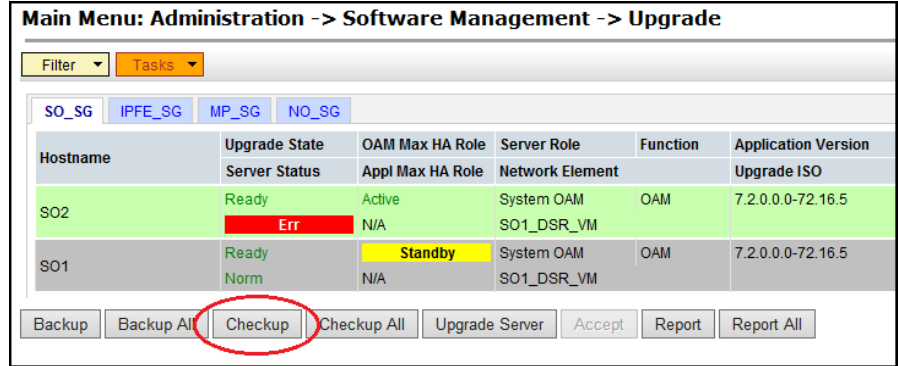
4

Active NOAM VIP:

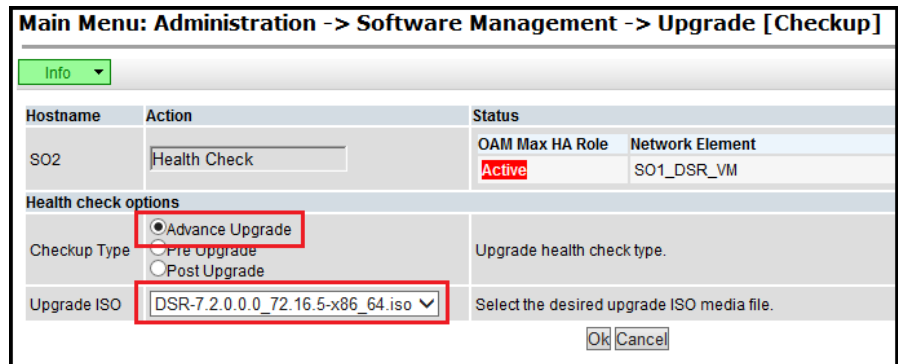
Initiate SOAM health check

This procedure will run the automated Health Checks on the Active SOAM.

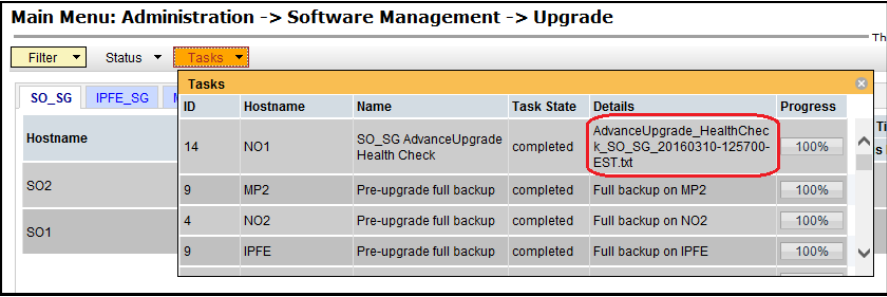
1. Select **Administration > Software Management > Upgrade**.
The Upgrade screen is displayed.
2. Select the SOAM server group tab.
3. Select the Active SOAM.



4. Click the **Checkup** button.
The Upgrade [Checkup] screen is displayed.
5. In the 'Health check options' section, select the **Advance Upgrade** option.
6. For a major upgrade, use the Upgrade ISO pulldown to select the target release ISO. Do not select an ISO for an incremental upgrade.
7. Click **Ok**. Control returns to the Upgrade screen.



Procedure 5: Data Collection for Source Release 7.2

| | |
|--|--|
| <p>5</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor health check progress</p> | <p>Monitor for the completion of the Health Check.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks dropdown to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO_SG> AdvanceUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column will display a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results.  |
| <p>6</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Analyze Health Check failure</p> | <p>If the Health Check report status is anything other than “Pass”, the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. 2. Select the Active SOAM tab. 3. Select the file named “UpgradeHealthCheck.log” and click View. 4. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. 5. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance as described in Appendix J. <p>If the health check log contains the message “Unable to execute Health Check on <Active NOAM hostname>”, perform health checks in accordance with Procedure 3 or Procedure 4, depending on the source release.</p> |
| <p>7</p> <p>Analyze and plan MP upgrade sequence</p> | <p>From the collected data, analyze system topology and plan for any DA-MP / IPFE / SBR / PCA which will be out-of-service during the upgrade sequence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Analyze system topology data gathered in Section 3.3.3.1 and steps 1 through 6 of this procedure. The Health Check reports from steps 3 and 6 can be found in Status & Manage > Files on the Active NOAM. 2. It is recommended to plan for MP upgrades by consulting MOS to assess the impact of out-of-service MP servers 3. Determine the manner in which the MP servers will be upgraded: Manually or Automated Server Group Upgrade. If the MPs will be upgraded manually, determine the exact sequence in which MP servers will be upgraded for each site. |


THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

3.3.4 DSR ISO Administration

This section provides the steps to upload the new DSR ISO to the NOAMs and then transfer the ISO to all servers to be upgraded.

NOTE: ISO transfers to the target systems may require a significant amount of time depending on the number of systems and the speed of the network. These factors may significantly affect total time needed and require the scheduling of multiple maintenance windows to complete the entire upgrade procedure. The ISO transfers to the target systems should be performed prior to, and outside of, the scheduled maintenance window. Schedule the required maintenance windows accordingly before proceeding.

Procedure 6: DSR ISO Administration

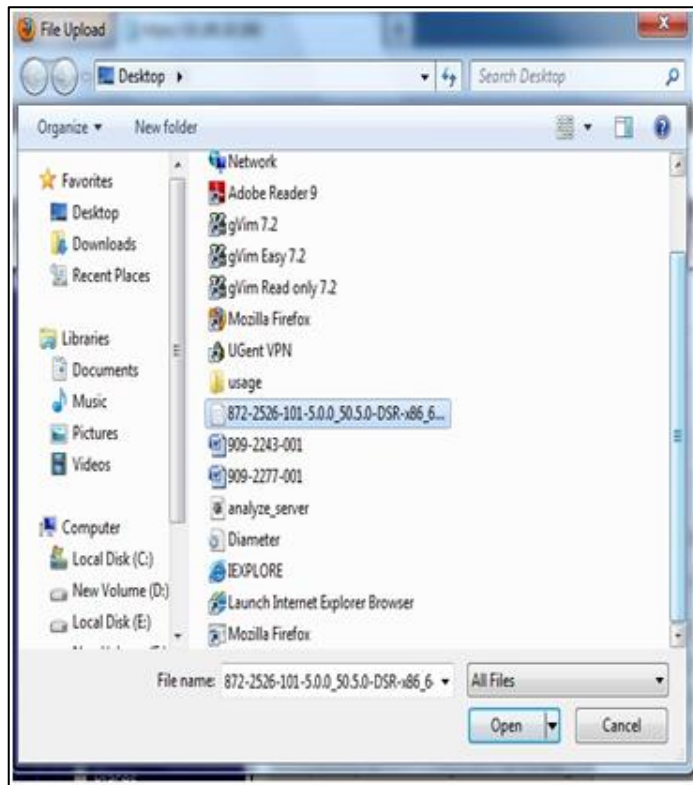
| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure verifies that ISO Administration steps have been completed.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| 1 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Upload ISO to Active NOAM server</p> | <p>Upload the application ISO to the Active NOAM:</p> <p>Use NOAM GUI Upload function for ISO file transfer over the network.</p> |
| 2 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Transfer via NOAM GUI</p> | <p>Use the NOAM GUI Upload function for ISO file transfer over the network</p> <p>Upload the target release ISO image file to the File Management Area of the Active NOAM server:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the Active NOAM GUI. 2. Select Status & Manage > Files The Files menu is displayed 3. Click the Active NOAM server in the network. All files stored in the file management storage area of this server display on the screen. 4. Ensure that this is actually the Active NOAM server in the network by comparing the hostname in the screen title vs. the hostname in the session banner in the GUI. Verify that they are the same and the status is ACTIVE in the session banner. 5. Click the Upload button. The Browse window will open: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;">  </div> |

Procedure 6: DSR ISO Administration

3

Active NOAM VIP:

1. **Browse** to select the file to upload.
2. The Choose File window displays, allowing selection of the file to upload.




3. Select the target release ISO image file and click **Open**.
4. The selected file and its path display on the screen.



5. Click **Upload**.
The ISO file begins uploading to the file management storage area.
6. Wait for the screen to refresh and display the uploaded ISO filename in the files list.
This will usually take between 2 to 10 minutes, but more if the network upload speed is slow.

Procedure 6: DSR ISO Administration

| <p>4</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Copy ISO to the Standby NOAM For an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1</p> | <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1, perform this step; otherwise, proceed to step 10.</p> <p>Copy the ISO file to the Standby NOAM.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems - or putty if running on Windows) to log into the Active NOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> Copy the ISO file to the Standby NOAM <pre>scp -p /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/<DSR_ISO_Filename> admusr@<Standby_NOAM_IP>:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</pre> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|---|--|------------------------|-----|-----------------|-----|-------------------------|-----|-----|-------------------------|-----|-----|-------------------------|-----|-----|-------------------------|-----|
| <p>5</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Using NOAM GUI, transfer ISO to all servers to be upgraded. For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1</p> | <p>The ISO deployment procedure has changed as of DSR 7.1.1. If the Active NOAM is on release 7.1.1 or later, proceed to step 7; otherwise continue with the steps below.</p> <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1:</p> <p>Transfer the target release ISO image file from the Active NOAM to all other DSR servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration >Software Management > ISO Deployment Click “Transfer ISO” <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> ISO</p> <p>Display Filter: <input type="text" value="- None -"/> <input type="text" value=""/> <input type="button" value="Go"/> (LIKE wildcard: "**")</p> <div style="background-color: #90EE90; padding: 5px; border: 1px solid black; margin: 5px 0;"> <p> No ISO Validate or Transfer in Progress.</p> </div> <p>Table description: List of Systems for ISO transfer.</p> <p>Displaying Records 1-4 of 4 total First Prev Next Last </p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">System Name / Hostname</th> <th style="text-align: left;">ISO</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Transfer Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MP1</td> <td>No transfer in progress</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MP2</td> <td>No transfer in progress</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>No transfer in progress</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>No transfer in progress</td> <td>N/A</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Displaying Records 1-4 of 4 total First Prev Next Last </p> <p>[Transfer ISO]</p> </div> | System Name / Hostname | ISO | Transfer Status | MP1 | No transfer in progress | N/A | MP2 | No transfer in progress | N/A | NO1 | No transfer in progress | N/A | NO2 | No transfer in progress | N/A |
| System Name / Hostname | ISO | Transfer Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MP1 | No transfer in progress | N/A | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MP2 | No transfer in progress | N/A | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | No transfer in progress | N/A | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | No transfer in progress | N/A | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 6: DSR ISO Administration

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>6</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>ISO transfer continued</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1</p> | <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Under the “Select ISO to Transfer:” drop down menu select the DSR 7.1.x/7.2 ISO. Under the “Select Target System(s):” select “Select All”. Select the checkbox next to “Perform Media Validation before Transfer”. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> ISO [Transfer ISO] Help</p> <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">Tue May 28 08:31:34 2013 UTC</p> <div style="background-color: #e0ffe0; border: 1px solid #00a000; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <p>i Note: ISOs are located in the connected server's File Management Area. Target Systems are configured via Systems Configuration. If GUI connection is to Standalone Server, ISO must be transferred to self before Upgrade.</p> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>Select ISO to Transfer:</p> <p>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.5.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</p> </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>Select Target System(s):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select All Deselect All MP1 MP2 MP3 MP4 NO1 NO2 SO1 SO2 </div> </div> <p>Perform Media Validation before Transfer <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Ok Cancel</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click Ok Control will return to the ISO screen. Monitor the progress until all file transfers have completed. Click Refresh to update the status of the transfer. If a file transfer fails, it must be retried. <p>NOTE: In the unlikely event that an ISO file transfer fails, repeat the transfer selecting only the specific system to which the transfer failed. If file transfers fail repeatedly, it is recommended to contact MOS for assistance.</p> |
|---|--|

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

Procedure 6: DSR ISO Administration

7

Active NOAM VIP:

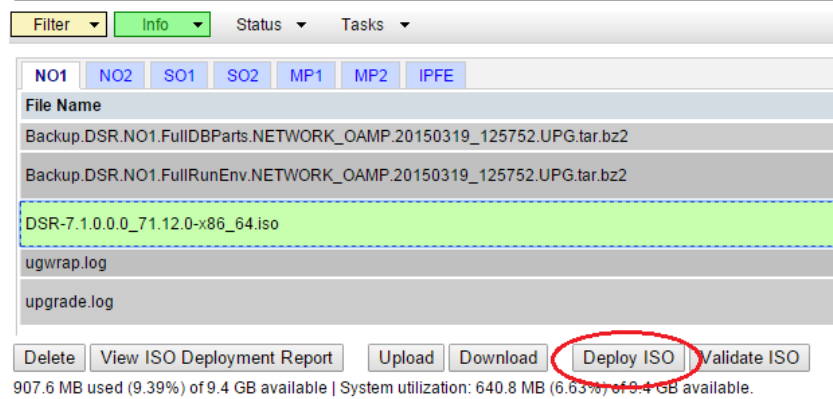
Using NOAM GUI, deploy ISO to all servers to be upgraded.

For Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 or later

Deploy ISO to all servers.

1. Select **Status & Manage > Files**
The Files menu is displayed
2. Click the Active NOAM server tab.
All files stored in the file management storage area of this server display on the screen.
3. Select the DSR 7.1.x or 7.2 ISO, and click the **View ISO Deployment Report** button.
4. In the resulting report, determine if the ISO has been deployed to all servers in the system.
5. If the ISO has been deployed to all servers, proceed to the next procedure; otherwise, complete the remaining steps in this procedure.
6. Select the 7.1.x or 7.2 DSR ISO in the file list, and click the **Validate ISO** button. Click **Ok** on the resulting confirmation dialog box.
7. Verify the ISO status is valid. If the ISO is not valid, repeat this procedure beginning with step 1. If the ISO fails validation more than once, it is recommended to contact MOS.
8. If the ISO is valid, select the ISO, and click the **Deploy ISO** button. Click **Ok** on the resulting confirmation dialog box.

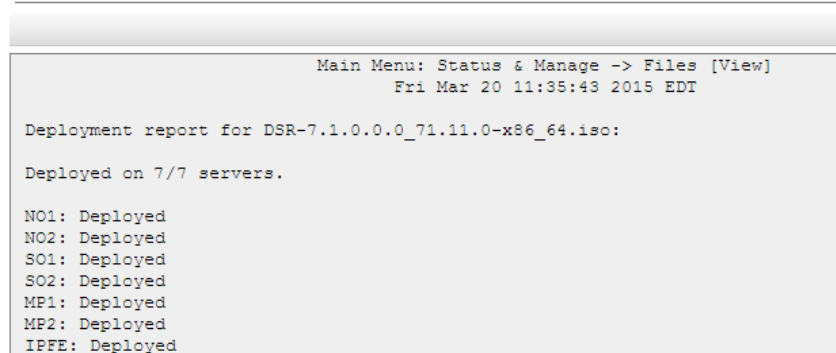
Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files



The deployment progress can be monitored by viewing the tasks dropdown list on the **Status & Manage > Files** screen.

9. Select the DSR 7.1.x or 7.2 ISO, and click the **View ISO Deployment Report** button. Verify that the ISO has been deployed to all servers in the system.

Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files [View]



THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

3.3.5 Full Backup of DB Run Environment at Each Server

The procedures in this section are part of software upgrade preparation and are used to conduct a full backup of the run environment on each server, to be used in the event of a backout of the new software release. The backup procedure to be executed is dependent on the software release that is running on the Active NOAM.



!! WARNING!! IF BACKOUT IS NEEDED, ANY CONFIGURATION CHANGES MADE AFTER THE DB IS BACKED UP AT EACH SERVER WILL BE LOST

3.3.5.1 Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 7.0.1

This procedure is used to backup the DB run environment when the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1.

Procedure 7: Full Backup of DB Rbun Environment for Release 7.0.1

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure (executed from the Active NOAM server) conducts a full backup of the run environment on each server, so that each server has the required data to perform a backout.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u></p> | |
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM CLI:</p> <p>Log into the Active NOAM</p> | <p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems - or putty if running on Windows) to log into the Active NOAM:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM CLI:</p> <p>Start a screen session.</p> | <p>Enter the following commands:</p> <pre>\$ screen</pre> <p>(The screen tool will create a no-hang-up shell session, so that the command will continue to execute if the user session is lost.)</p> |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM CLI:</p> <p>Execute Full Backup for all servers (managed from this NOAM)</p> | <p>Execute the backupAllHosts utility on the Active NOAM. This utility will remotely access each server managed by the NOAM, and run the backup command for that server.</p> <pre>\$ /usr/TKLC/dpi/bin/backupAllHosts Do you want to remove the old backup files (if exists) from all the servers (y/[n])?y</pre> <p>It may take from 10 to 30 minutes for this command to complete, depending upon the number of servers and the data in the database. Do not proceed until the backup on each server is completed.</p> <p>Output similar to the following will indicate successful completion:</p> <pre>Script Completed. Status: HOSTNAME STATUS ----- HPC3blade02 PASS HPC3blade01 PASS HPC3blade03 PASS HPC3blade04 PASS</pre> <p>(Errors will also report back to the command line.)</p> <p>NOTE: There is no progress indication for this command; only the final report when it completes.</p> |

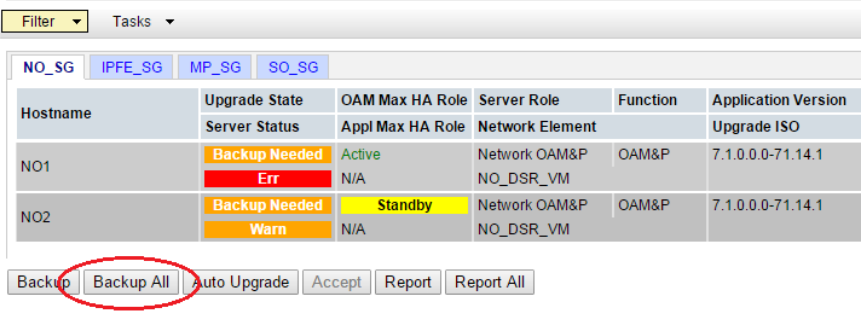
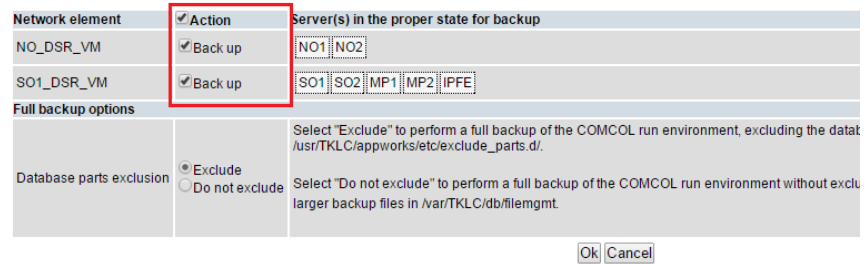
Procedure 7: Full Backup of DB Rbun Environment for Release 7.0.1

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure (executed from the Active NOAM server) conducts a full backup of the run environment on each server, so that each server has the required data to perform a backout.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| 4 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM CLI:</p> <p>Exit the screen session.</p> | <pre># exit</pre> <pre>[screen is terminating]</pre> <p>NOTE: “screen -ls” is used to show active screen sessions on a server, and “screen -dr” is used to re-enter a disconnected screen session.</p> |
| 5 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>ALTERNATIVE METHOD (Optional)</p> <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>If needed, the alternative backup method can be executed on each individual server instead of using the “backupAllHosts” script.</p> | <p>ALTERNATIVE: A manual back up can be executed on each server individually, rather than using the script above. To do this, log into each server in the site individually, and execute the following command to manually generate a full backup on that server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/full_backup</pre> <p>Output similar to the following will indicate successful completion:</p> <pre>Success: Full backup of COMCOL run env has completed. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullDBParts. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullRunEnv. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt.</pre> |
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify that backup files are present on each server.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the Active NOAM. 2. Select Status & Manage > Files The Files menu is displayed 3. Click on each server tab, in turn 4. For each server, verify that the following (2) files have been created: <pre>Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG. tar.bz2 Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.t ar.bz2</pre> |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | |

3.3.5.2 Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 7.1.x and later

This procedure is used to backup the DB run environment when the Active NOAM is on release 7.1.x and later.

Procedure 8: Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 7.1.x and later

| S T E P # | <p>This procedure (executed from the Active NOAM server) conducts a full backup of the run environment on each server, so that each server has the required data to perform a backout.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--|---|----------------------------|----------|--|-----------|---|---------------|-----------------|---|----------------------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|----------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------|-----------------|-----|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------|-----------------|
| 1 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Start backup of all servers</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Login to the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 3. Click the Backup All button. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG</th> <th>MP_SG</th> <th>SO_SG</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname</td> <td>Upgrade State</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role</td> <td>Server Role</td> <td>Function</td> <td>Application Version</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl Max HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Backup Needed Err</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.14.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Backup Needed Warn</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.14.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Backup Needed Err | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 | NO2 | Backup Needed Warn | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 |
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Backup Needed Err | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Backup Needed Warn | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Select network elements to backup</p> | <p>The Upgrade [Backup All] screen is displayed. This screen displays the various Network Elements, and identifies which servers are ready for backup.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the Action column, select the Back up checkbox for each Network Element. 2. Ensure the 'Exclude' radio button is selected. 3. Click the Ok button. This initiates a full backup on each eligible server. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Backup All]</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network element</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Server(s) in the proper state for backup</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up</td> <td>NO1 NO2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up</td> <td>SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 IPFE</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Full backup options</p> <p>Database parts exclusion: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Exclude <input type="radio"/> Do not exclude</p> <p>Select "Exclude" to perform a full backup of the COMCOL run environment, excluding the data /usr/TKLC/appworks/etc/exclude_parts.d/. Select "Do not exclude" to perform a full backup of the COMCOL run environment without excluding larger backup files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt.</p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> | Network element | Action | Server(s) in the proper state for backup | NO_DSR_VM | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up | NO1 NO2 | SO1_DSR_VM | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up | SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 IPFE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Network element | Action | Server(s) in the proper state for backup | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO_DSR_VM | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up | NO1 NO2 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SO1_DSR_VM | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up | SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 IPFE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 8: Full Backup of DB Run Environment for Release 7.1.x and later

| S T E P # | <p>This procedure (executed from the Active NOAM server) conducts a full backup of the run environment on each server, so that each server has the required data to perform a backout.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|--|---------------|----------|---------------------|-------------|--|--|--|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|-------------|-----|--------------------|--------|---------------|-------|-------------------|--|-----|--------------------|---------|---------------|-------|-------------------|--|
| 3 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor backup progress</p> | <p>Monitor the upgrade progress.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select each server group tab and verify that each server transitions from 'Backup in Progress' to 'Ready'. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter <input type="text"/> Tasks <input type="text"/></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>NO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG</th> <th>MP_SG</th> <th>SO_SG</th> <th colspan="3"></th> </tr> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td style="background-color: yellow;">Backup In Progress</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td style="background-color: yellow;">Backup In Progress</td> <td style="background-color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0</td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p> </div> | NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Backup In Progress | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | | NO2 | Backup In Progress | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | |
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Backup In Progress | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Backup In Progress | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | <p>ALTERNATIVE METHOD (Optional)</p> <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>If needed, the Alternative backup method can be executed on each individual server instead of using the "backupAllHosts" script.</p> | <p>ALTERNATIVE: A manual back up can be executed on each server individually, rather than using the GUI method above. To do this, log into each server in the site individually, and execute the following command to manually generate a full backup on that server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/full_backup</pre> <p>Output similar to the following will indicate successful completion:</p> <pre>Success: Full backup of COMCOL run env has completed. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filegmt/Backup.dsr.01.FullDBParts. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filegmt. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filegmt/Backup.dsr.01.FullRunEnv. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filegmt.</pre> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 5 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify that backup files are present on each server.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the Active NOAM. Select Status & Manage > Files The Files menu is displayed Click on each Server tab, in turn For each Server, verify that the following (2) files have been created: <pre>Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>. UPG.tar.bz2 Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.U PG.tar.bz2</pre> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

3.3.6 Network Interface Workaround

In some Cloud environments, the network interface names are not persistent across a server boot or upgrade. Interface renaming can result in the loss of IP access to the server. To prevent this from occurring, this procedure creates a network persistence rules file on each server. This procedure is required prior to upgrading to DSR Release 7.1.x / 7.2.



!! WARNING!!

THIS PROCEDURE MUST BE COMPLETED PRIOR TO UPGRADING TO DSR RELEASE 7.1.x / 7.2

Procedure 9: Network Interface Workaround

| S T E P # | <p>This procedure creates a network persistence rules file.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| 1 | <p>Server CLI</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Create network rules file</p> | <p>Execute the following commands on the server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the Active NOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<server_ip> password: <enter password></pre> Enter the following command to create the rules file: <pre>\$ sudo udevadm trigger --subsystem-match=net</pre> <p>Verify the rules file “70-persistent-net.rules” is created:</p> <pre>\$ ls /etc/udev/rules.d /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules</pre> |
| 2 | <p><input type="checkbox"/> Repeat for all servers</p> | <p>Repeat step 1 for each server in the Cloud deployment.</p> |

3.3.7 IDIH Pre-Upgrade

If IDIH is a component of a Network Element, it may be upgraded either before or after the DSR. The order of upgrade will not impact the functionality of either component. However, it should be noted that certain compatibility limitations may exist while the two components are not on the same release.

The IDIH upgrade procedures are provided in Appendix H and may be performed at any time after Section 3.3.7.1 has been completed.

Table 5: IDIH Upgrade Preparation Overview.

| Procedure | This Step | Cum. | Procedure Title | Impact |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|--------------------------|--------|
| Procedure 10 | 0:15-0:30 | 0:15-0:30 | IDIH Upgrade Preparation | None |

3.3.7.1 IDIH Upgrade Preparation

This procedure prepares the Mediation and Application guests for upgrade.

Procedure 10: IDIH Upgrade Preparation

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure prepares the Mediation and Application guests for upgrade. | |
| | Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. | |
| SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE | | |
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | Place the Mediation and Application OVAs in the Cloud repository. | 1. Follow the hypervisor's instructions to add the Mediation and Application OVAs to the cloud repository. |

3.4 Software Upgrade Execution Overview

It is recommended to contact MOS as described in Appendix J *prior* to executing this upgrade to ensure that the proper media are available for use.

Before upgrade, users must have performed the data collection and system health check instructions in section 3.3. This check ensures that the system to be upgraded is in an upgrade-ready state. Performing the system health check determines which alarms are present in the system and if upgrade can proceed with alarms.

*** WARNING ***

If there are servers in the system which are not in a Normal state, these servers should be brought to the Normal or Application Disabled state before the upgrade process is started. The sequence of upgrade is such that servers providing support services to other servers will be upgraded first.

If alarms are present on the server, it is recommended to contact MOS to diagnose those alarms and determine whether they need to be addressed, or if it is safe to proceed with the upgrade.

Please read the following notes on upgrade procedures:

- All procedure completion times shown in this document are estimates. Times may vary due to differences in database size, user experience, and user preparation.
- The shaded area within response steps must be verified in order to successfully complete that step.
- Where possible, command response outputs are shown as accurately as possible. EXCEPTIONS are as follows:
 - Session banner information such as *time* and *date*.
 - System-specific configuration information such as *hardware locations*, *IP addresses* and *hostnames*.
 - ANY information marked with “XXXX” or “YYYY.” Where appropriate, instructions are provided to determine what output should be expected in place of “XXXX” or “YYYY”
 - Aesthetic differences unrelated to functionality such as *browser attributes: window size, colors, toolbars*, and *button layouts*.
- After completing each step, and at each point where data is recorded from the screen, the technician performing the upgrade must initial each step. A check box is provided. For procedures which are executed multiple times, the check box can be skipped, but the technician must initial each iteration the step is executed. The space on either side of the step number can be used (margin on left side or column on right side).
- Captured data is required for future support reference if an MOS representative is not present during the upgrade.
- Answer these questions, and record:

What is the DSR Application version to be upgraded? _____

What is the DSR Application new version to be applied? _____

Is this a Major or Incremental Upgrade? _____

Are there IPFE servers to upgrade? _____

Is SDS also deployed (co-located) at the DSR site? _____

Note: SDS does not need to be upgraded at the same time.

Is IDIH also deployed (co-located) at the DSR site? _____

3.4.1 Accepting the Upgrade

After the upgrade of **ALL** Servers in the topology has been completed, and following an appropriate soak time, the Post-Upgrade procedures in **Section 6** are performed in a separate Maintenance Window to finalize the upgrade. Procedure 67 “Accepts” the upgrade and performs a final Health Check of the system to monitor alarms and server status. Accepting the upgrade is the last step in the upgrade. Once the upgrade is accepted, the upgrade is final and cannot be backed out.

4 NOAM UPGRADE EXECUTION

NOAM UPGRADE

The NOAM upgrade section is common to all topologies. This section must be completed before executing the site upgrade procedures.

Procedures for the NOAM upgrade include steps for the upgrade of the Disaster Recovery NOAM (DR NOAM) servers also. If no DR NOAM is present in the customer deployment, then the DR NOAM-related steps can be safely ignored.

Global Provisioning will be disabled before upgrading the NOAM servers. Provisioning activities at the NOAM and SOAM servers will have certain limitations during the period where the NOAMs are upgraded and the sites are not yet upgraded.

The Elapsed Time mentioned in table below specifies the time to upgrade the DSR application without the upgrade of the corresponding TVOE. If the TVOE Host upgrades are performed with the application, an additional 60 minutes should be added to the estimated time. All times are estimates.

Table 6: NOAM Upgrade Execution Overview

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|---|------------------------------|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 11 or Procedure 12 | 0:30-0:45 0:20-0:30 | 0:30-0:45 0:20-0:30 | NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.2 | None None |
| Procedure 13 | 0:05-0:10 | 0:25-0:55 | NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup | None |
| Procedure 14 | 0:01-0:05 | 0:26-1:00 | Disable Global Provisioning | Global Provisioning Disabled |
| Procedure 15 | 0:40-1:20 | 1:06-2:20 | NOAM Upgrade | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 16 | 0:01-0:05 | 1:07-2:25 | PCA (formerly PDRA) Topology Hiding Configuration | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 17 | 0:05-0:15 | 1:12-2:40 | Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status | None |
| Procedure 18 | 0:05-0:10 | 1:17-2:50 | Allow Provisioning (post NOAM Upgrade) | Global Provisioning Enabled |

4.1 NOAM Pre-Upgrade Checks and Backup

The procedures in this section perform health checks and backups to prepare the NOAM NE for upgrade. These procedures must be executed on the Active NOAM.

Note: These procedures may be executed outside of the maintenance window, but should be executed within 6 to 8 hours prior to Procedure 15.

4.1.1 NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

This procedure is used to determine the health and status of the network and servers when the NOAM is on source release 7.0.1 or 7.1.x. This procedure must be executed on the Active NOAM.

Procedure 11: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

| S T E P # | This procedure performs a Health Check of the system prior to upgrading the NOAMs. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---|------------------------|-----|-----------------|-----|---|----------|-----|---|----------|-----|---|----------|-------------|---|----------|-------------|---|----------|-------|---|----------|-------|---|----------|
| 1. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify ISO for Upgrade has been deployed</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1. If the Active NOAM is on release 7.1.x, proceed to step 2.</p> <p>Verify the DSR ISO file has been transferred to all servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > ISO Deployment Verify the "Transfer Status" is "Complete" for each server in the topology. If any server shows "Not Complete", perform Section 3.3.4 - DSR ISO Administration <p>Example:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> ISO Help</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Wed Sep 25 17:39:13 2013 UTC</p> <p>Display Filter: <input type="text" value="- None -"/> = <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Go"/> (LIKE wildcard: "**")</p> <div style="background-color: #90EE90; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid black; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>i Transfer ISO Complete. ISO: 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</p> <p>7 of 7 Transfers Successful. 0 of 7 Transfers Failed.</p> </div> <p>Table description: List of Systems for ISO transfer.</p> <p>Displaying Records 1-7 of 7 total First Prev Next Last </p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">System Name / Hostname</th> <th style="text-align: left;">ISO</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Transfer Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MP1</td> <td>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Complete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MP2</td> <td>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Complete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MP3</td> <td>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Complete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>T2-NO-228-A</td> <td>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Complete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>T2-NO-228-B</td> <td>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Complete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ipfe1</td> <td>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Complete</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ipfe2</td> <td>872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso</td> <td>Complete</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Displaying Records 1-7 of 7 total First Prev Next Last </p> <p>[Transfer ISO]</p> </div> <p>Proceed to step 3 to complete this procedure.</p> | System Name / Hostname | ISO | Transfer Status | MP1 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | MP2 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | MP3 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | T2-NO-228-A | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | T2-NO-228-B | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | ipfe1 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | ipfe2 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete |
| System Name / Hostname | ISO | Transfer Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MP1 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MP2 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| MP3 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| T2-NO-228-A | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| T2-NO-228-B | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ipfe1 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ipfe2 | 872-2526-101-5.0.0_50.12.0-DSR-x86_64.iso | Complete | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 11: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>2.</p> <p>Verify ISO for Upgrade has been deployed</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.1.x only</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify the DSR ISO file has been transferred to all servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files 2. Select the target release DSR ISO and click “View ISO Deployment Report”. 3. Review the report to ensure the ISO is deployed to all servers in the topology <p>Sample report:</p> <pre>Deployment report for DSR-7.1.1.0.0_71.27.0-x86_64.iso: Deployed on 7/7 servers. NO1: Deployed NO2: Deployed SO1: Deployed SO2: Deployed MP1: Deployed MP2: Deployed IPFE: Deployed</pre> |
| <p>3.</p> <p>Verify NOAM pre-Upgrade Status</p> | <p>Active NOAM CLI:</p> <p>Execute the following commands on the Active DSR NOAM and Active DR NOAM servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use an SSH client to connect to the Active NOAM: <pre>ssh <NOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 3.</p> 2. Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck preUpgradeHealthCheck</pre> <p>This command creates two files in <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck/</code> with the filename format:</p> <pre><NOserver_name>_ServerStatusReport_<date-time>.xml <NOserver_name>_ComAgentConnStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If any alarms are present in the system:</p> <pre><NOserver_name>_AlarmStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If the system is PDRA, one additional file is generated:</p> <pre><NOserver_name>_SBRStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the <code>upgradeHealthCheck</code> command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> 3. If the message “Server <hostname> needs operator attention before upgrade” is output, inspect the Server Status Report to determine the reason for the message. If the following message appears in the Server Status Report, the alert can be ignored: Server <hostname> has no alarm with DB State as Normal and Process state as Kill. <p>Note: If any server status is not as expected, do not proceed with the upgrade. It is recommended to contact MOS for guidance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Keep these reports for future reference. These reports will be compared to alarm and status reports after the upgrade is complete. |

Procedure 11: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Export and archive the Diameter configuration data</p> | <p>Export Diameter configuration data.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Main Menu > Diameter Common > Export 2. Capture and archive the Diameter data by choosing the drop down entry labeled “ALL”. 3. Verify the data export is complete using the tasks button at the top of the screen. 4. Browse to Main Menu > Status & Manage > Files and download all the exported files to the client machine, or use the SCP utility to download the files from the Active NOAM to the client machine. |
| <p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>Pre-upgrade health checks</p> | <p>Execute SOAM pre-upgrade alarm status health checks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use an SSH client to connect to the Active SOAM: <pre>ssh <SOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 3.</p> 2. Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck alarmStatusOnSoam</pre> <p>If any alarms are present in the system, this command creates a file in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/ UpgradeHealthCheck/ with the filename format:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_AlarmStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> 3. Keep this report for future reference. This report will be compared to alarm and status reports after the upgrade is complete. |
| <p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>Pre-upgrade health checks</p> | <p>Execute SOAM pre-upgrade DA-MP status health checks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck daMpStatus</pre> <p>This command outputs status to the screen for review.</p> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> 2. Verify all Peer MPs are available 3. Note the number of Total Connections Established _____ |
| <p>7.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>Verify PCA status (if equipped)</p> | <p>Execute SOAM pre-upgrade PCA status health checks, if equipped.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck pcaStatus</pre> <p>This command outputs status to the screen for review.</p> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> 2. Verify Operational Status is ‘Available’ for all applications |
| <p>8.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Repeat for each Network Element</p> | <p>Repeat Steps 5 - 7 for each SOAM site in the topology.</p> |

Procedure 11: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| <p>9.</p> <div style="background-color: white; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px 0;"></div> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Verify that backups are created for all servers</p> | <p>Verify that a recent COMCOL Environment backup has been performed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status and Manage > Files. 2. Select each server tab, in turn. 3. Verify the following two files have been created and have a current timestamp: <div style="font-family: monospace; color: blue;"> Backup.DSR.<hostname>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<timestamp>.UPG.tar.bz2 </div> <div style="font-family: monospace; color: blue;"> Backup.DSR.<hostname>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<timestamp>.UPG.tar.bz2 </div> 4. Repeat this procedure for each site. <p>See Section 3.3.5 to perform (or repeat) a full Backup, if needed.</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |

4.1.2 NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.2

This procedure is used to determine the health and status of the network and servers when the NOAM is on release 7.2. This procedure must be executed on the Active NOAM.

Note: This procedure may be executed outside of the maintenance window, but should be executed within 6 to 8 hours prior to Procedure 15.

Procedure 12: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.2

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure performs a Health Check on the NOAM.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Verify Upgrade ISO has been deployed</p> | <p>Verify the DSR ISO file has been transferred to all servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > Files 2. Select the target release DSR ISO and click "View ISO Deployment Report". 3. Review the report to ensure the ISO is deployed to all servers in the topology <p>Sample report:</p> <pre>Deployment report for DSR-7.2.0.0.0_72.27.0-x86_64.iso: Deployed on 7/7 servers. NO1: Deployed NO2: Deployed SO1: Deployed SO2: Deployed MP1: Deployed MP2: Deployed IPFE: Deployed</pre> |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Export and archive the Diameter configuration data</p> | <p>Export Diameter configuration data.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Main Menu > Diameter Common > Export 2. Capture and archive the Diameter data by choosing the drop down entry labeled "ALL". 3. Verify the data export is complete using the tasks button at the top of the screen. 4. Browse to Main Menu > Status & Manage > Files and download all the exported files to the client machine, or use the SCP utility to download the files from the Active NOAM to the client machine. |

Procedure 12: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.2

3

Active NOAM VIP:

Initiate NOAM health checks

This procedure runs the automated pre-upgrade Health Checks.

1. Select **Administration > Software Management > Upgrade**.
The Upgrade screen is displayed.
2. Select the Active NOAM.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

Filter Tasks

| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | |
|----------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|----------|---------------------|
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO |
| NO1 | Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.2.0.0.0-72.16.5 |
| | Norm | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | |
| NO2 | Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.2.0.0.0-72.16.5 |
| | Norm | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | |

Backup Backup All **Checkup** Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All

3. Click the **Checkup** button.
The Upgrade [Checkup] screen is displayed.
4. Under Health check options, select the **Pre Upgrade** option.
5. Use the **Upgrade ISO** pulldown to select the target release ISO.
6. Click **Ok**. Control returns to the Upgrade screen.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]

Info

| Hostname | Action | Status |
|----------|--------------|--|
| NO1 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: NO_DSR_VM |

Health check options

Checkup Type: Pre Upgrade Advance Upgrade Post Upgrade

Upgrade ISO: DSR-7.2.0.0.0_72.16.5-x86_64.iso

Ok Cancel

Procedure 12: NOAM Health Check for Source Release 7.2

| <p>4</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor health check progress</p> | <p>Monitor for the completion of the Health Check.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks dropdown to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <NOServerGroup> PreUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column will display a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr style="background-color: #e0e0e0;"> <td>6</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-125508-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-124312-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | 6 | NO1 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.txt | 100% | 4 | NO1 | NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-125508-EST.txt | 100% | 3 | NO1 | NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-124312-EST.txt | 100% |
|--|---|-----------------------------------|------------|--|------------|---------|----------|---|-----|-------------------------------|-----------|--|------|---|-----|-----------------------------------|-----------|--|------|---|-----|-----------------------------------|-----------|--|------|
| ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 6 | NO1 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 4 | NO1 | NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-125508-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | NO1 | NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-124312-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>5</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Analyze health check results</p> | <p>Analyze Health Check report for failures. If the Health Check report status is anything other than "Pass", the Health Check logs must be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. 2. Select the file named "UpgradeHealthCheck.log" and click View. 3. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance as described in Appendix J. <p>If the health check log contains the message "Unable to execute Health Check on <Active NOAM hostname>", perform health checks in accordance with Procedure 11.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

4.1.3 NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

This procedure takes a backup of the NOAM servers just prior to the upgrade.

Procedure 13: NOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure takes a backup of the NOAM.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND</u> AND ASK FOR <u>UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u>.</p> | |
| <p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Backup all global configuration databases for NOAM</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Required for Disaster Recovery</p> | <p>Backup NOAM database.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Database to return to the Database Status screen. 2. Click to highlight the Active NOAM server; click Backup. NOTE: the Backup button will only be enabled when the Active server is selected. <p>The Database [Backup] screen is displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Select the Configuration checkbox. 4. Select the desired compression type. Retain the default selection unless there is a specific reason or direction to change it. 5. Enter Comments (optional) 6. Click OK. <p>NOTE: On the Status & Manage >Database screen, the Active NOAM server will display the word "Active" in the "OAM Max HA Role" column.</p> |
| <p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Save database backups for NOAM</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Required for Disaster Recovery</p> | <p>Download database files from the NOAM.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files <p>The Files menu is displayed.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Click on the Active NOAM server tab. 3. Select the configuration database backup file and click the Download button. 4. If a confirmation window is displayed, click Save. 5. If the Choose File window is displayed, select a destination folder on the local workstation to store the backup file. Click Save. 6. If a Download Complete confirmation is displayed, click Close. |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |

4.2 Disable Global Provisioning

The following procedure disables provisioning on the NOAM. This step ensures that no changes are made to the database while the NOAMs are upgraded. Provisioning will be re-enabled once the NOAM upgrade is complete.

Procedure 14: Disable Global Provisioning

| | | |
|--|--|---|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure disables provisioning for the NOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| <p>1.</p> <div style="background-color: white; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin-left: 5px;"></div> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Disable global provisioning and configuration.</p> | <p>Disable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the Active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed 3. Click the Disable Provisioning button. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning; a yellow information box should also be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 002] - Global provisioning has been manually disabled. <p>The Active NOAM server will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |

4.3 NOAM Upgrade

This procedure is used to upgrade the NOAM and DR NOAM servers.

Procedure 15: NOAM Upgrade

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the NOAM servers. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade Standby DSR NOAM servers or standalone NOAM server. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Upgrade the Standby DSR NOAM server using Upgrade Single Server procedure: Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure Note: If the DSR deployment does not have a Standby NOAM then perform Appendix G for the standalone NOAM. Execute Appendix G – Server Upgrade Using platcfg 2. After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D or Appendix G, return to this point and continue with the next step. <p>The Active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31225 (HA Service Start Failure) Alarm ID = 31226 (HA Availability Status Degraded) Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Path Down) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> <p>If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with MOS on the best course of action.</p> <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.1.1 or later, proceed to step 3.</p> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> Prepare the Active NOAM for upgrade For NOAM on release 7.0.1 only | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> Prepare the Active NOAM for Upgrade. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed 2. Select the NOAM Server Group: 3. Select the Active NOAM. 4. On the upgrade form, make the Active NOAM 'Upgrade Ready', by selecting the Prepare button. 5. On the Upgrade [Prepare] form, select 'Prepare' in the Action dropdown list. Click the Ok button. This starts the Prepare action on the Active NOAM and forces an HA failover. 6. Log out of the GUI, clear the browser cache, and log back into the Active NOAM via the VIP before continuing. <p>Clear the 'Prepared' state for the now-standby NOAM. This is required due to the transition from release 7.0.1 to release 7.1.x/7.2.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. Select Status & Manage > HA. The HA status screen is displayed. 8. Click the Edit button. 9. For the NOAM to be upgraded (now the Standby), set the Max Allowed HA Role to Active, and click Ok. 10. Select Status & Manage > Server. The server status screen is displayed. 11. Select the Standby NOAM and click the Restart button. 12. Click Ok and verify the Appl State changes to Enabled. |

Procedure 15: NOAM Upgrade

| | | |
|---|------------------------------------|---|
| <p>3. <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Upgrade Active NOAM servers</p> | <p>Upgrade the Active NOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure:</p> <p>Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, continue to the next procedure per Table 6.</p> <p>If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with MOS on the best course of action.</p> |
| <p>4. <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Upgrade Standby DR NOAM</p> | <p>Upgrade the Standby DR NOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure:</p> <p>Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |
| <p>5. <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Upgrade Active DR NOAM</p> | <p>Upgrade the Active DR NOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure:</p> <p>Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 6.</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |

4.3.1 PCA (formerly PDRA) Topology Hiding Configuration

In DSR 7.0, the Policy and Charging Topology Hiding configuration moved from being site-specific at the SOAM, to being network-wide specific at the NOAM. Because each site could be independently configured, manual intervention is required to determine the appropriate setting for the network-wide configuration. The network-wide settings will apply to ALL sites once the site is upgraded.

This procedure is applicable only to systems with the Policy and Charging feature enabled.

This procedure is applicable only to major upgrades from 7.0.1 to DSR 7.1.x/7.2.

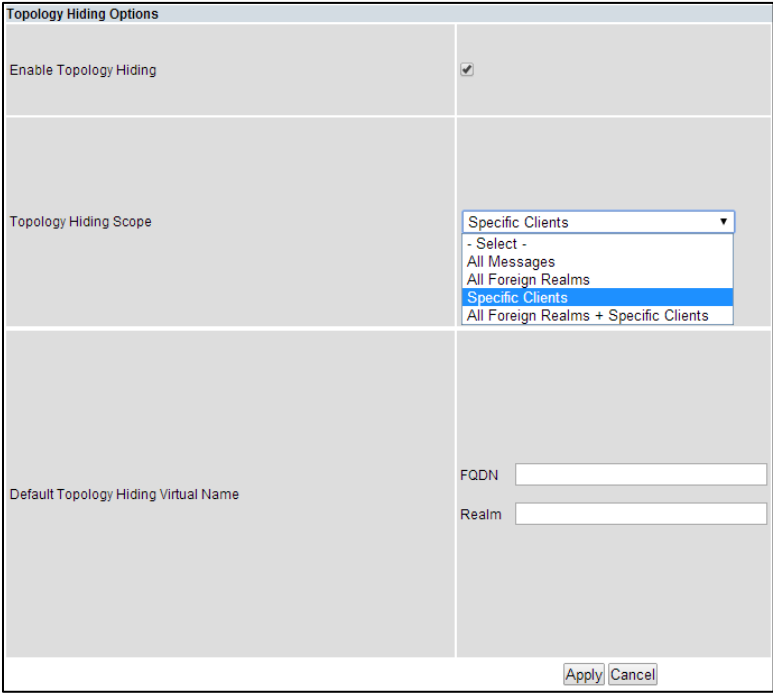
NOTE: The network-wide Topology Hiding settings at the NOAM will apply to each site as it is upgraded. Please note that this may result in a behavior change if the pre-upgrade site settings differ from the network-wide settings.

NOTE: This procedure can be skipped if Topology Hiding is not in use for this system.

Procedure 16: PCA (formerly PDRA) Topology Hiding Configuration

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure sets the network-wide Topology Hiding configuration. This procedure applies only to systems with the Policy and Charging feature enabled.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Enable Global Provisioning</p> | <p>Before the Topology Hiding configuration can be modified, Global Provisioning must be enabled temporarily.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed. 3. Click the Enable Provisioning button. 4. Verify the button text changes to Disable Provisioning. |

Procedure 16: PCA (formerly PDRA) Topology Hiding Configuration

| | | |
|----|---|---|
| 2. | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Configure Topology Hiding settings</p> | <p>Configure the topology hiding settings.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Policy and Charging > Configuration > Policy DRA > Network-Wide Options. 2. In the Topology Hiding Options section, select the Enable Topology Hiding checkmark. 3. Select the appropriate Topology Hiding Scope setting. 4. Enter a Default Topology Hiding Virtual Name – FQDN and Realm. These default values will be used if specific values have not been set at a site. 5. Select Apply.  |
| 3. | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Disable global provisioning and configuration.</p> | <p>Disable global provisioning.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed 2. Click the Disable Provisioning button. 3. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 4. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning. A yellow information box should also be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 002] - Global provisioning has been manually disabled. <p>The Active NOAM server will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> |

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

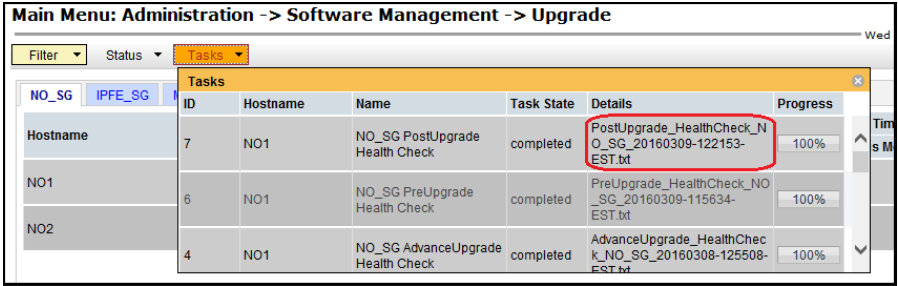
4.4 Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status

This procedure determines the validity of the upgrade, as well as the health and status of the network and servers.

Procedure 17: Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status

| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure verifies Post Upgrade Status for NOAM upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---------|---------------|-------|-------|-----|-------|--------|---------------|-----|-------|---------|---------------|----------|--------|--------|-----|--------------|--------|
| <p>1</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Post-upgrade health checks</p> <p>This procedure will run the automated post-upgrade Health Checks.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade screen is displayed. Select the Active NOAM. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>NO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG</th> <th>MP_SG</th> <th>SO_SG</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Buttons: Backup, Backup All, Checkup, Checkup All, Upgrade Server, Accept, Report, Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Checkup button. The Upgrade [Checkup] screen is displayed. Under Health check options, select the Post Upgrade option. Click Ok. Control returns to the Upgrade screen. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td>Active</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p>Checkup Type: <input type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade, <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade, <input checked="" type="radio"/> Post Upgrade</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: - Select -</p> <p>Buttons: Ok, Cancel</p> </div> | NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | NO1 | Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | NO2 | Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | Hostname | Action | Status | NO1 | Health Check | Active |
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Action | Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Health Check | Active | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 17: Verify NOAM Post Upgrade Status

| <p>2</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor health check progress</p> | <p>Monitor for the completion of the Health Check.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks dropdown to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <NOServerGroup> PostUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column will display a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results.  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG</th> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-122153-EST.bt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>6</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.bt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>4</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-125508-EST.bt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | NO_SG | IPFE_SG | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | 7 | NO1 | NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-122153-EST.bt | 100% | | | 6 | NO1 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.bt | 100% | | | 4 | NO1 | NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-125508-EST.bt | 100% |
|--|--|-------|----------|-----------------------------------|------------|---|------------|---------|----------|--|--|---|-----|--------------------------------|-----------|--|------|--|--|---|-----|-------------------------------|-----------|---|------|--|--|---|-----|-----------------------------------|-----------|---|------|
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 7 | NO1 | NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-122153-EST.bt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 6 | NO1 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.bt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 4 | NO1 | NO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160308-125508-EST.bt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>3</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Analyze health check results</p> | <p>Analyze Health Check failure. If the Health Check report status is anything other than "Pass", the Health Check logs must be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. 2. Select the file named "UpgradeHealthCheck.log" and click View. 3. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. 4. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance as described in Appendix J. <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

4.5 Allow Provisioning (post NOAM Upgrade)

The following procedure enables Global Provisioning after the NOAM upgrade.

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>ANY NETWORK-WIDE PROVISIONING CHANGES MADE AT THE NOAM SITE BEFORE THE UPGRADE IS ACCEPTED WILL BE LOST IF THE UPGRADE IS BACKED OUT</p> |
|---|--|

Procedure 18: Allow Provisioning (post NOAM Upgrade)

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure enables provisioning for the NOAM and DR NOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| <p>1.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Enable global provisioning and configuration.</p> | <p>Enable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the Active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed 3. Click the Enable Provisioning button. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Provisioning. |
| <p>Note: After enabling provisioning at the NOAM, it is possible that the SOAM GUI(s) will display a banner indicating that global provisioning is disabled. This message can be ignored – global provisioning is enabled. This is a display issue only and will be corrected when the SOAMs are upgraded.</p> | | |
| <p>2.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Add new Network Element (if required).</p> | <p>Perform this step only if the addition of a new Network Element is required at this time</p> <p>If a new Network Element is to be added, this procedure can be started now. Addition of the new Network Element will require a separate maintenance window. The servers in the new Network Element must be installed with the same DSR release as that of the upgraded NOAM(s). Follow the DSR 7.1.x/7.2 Installation Procedures in reference [1] to install the software on the new servers and add the new Network Element under the existing NOAM(s). Skip the sections of the Installation Procedure related to installing and configuring the NOAM(s). This will add a new DSR SOAM site under the existing NOAM(s).</p> |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | |

5 SOAM UPGRADE EXECUTION

SOAM UPGRADE: Pre-Upgrade Activities (All Configurations)

Use this section to execute pre-upgrade backups, pre-checks and to disable Site Provisioning for all SOAM configurations.

This section contains the procedures for Pre-Upgrade backups, Pre-Upgrade Health Checks and the disabling of Site Provisioning which apply to all DSR 7.1.x/7.2 Upgrade configurations.

5.1 Select SOAM Site Upgrade Path

This section provides the detailed procedure steps of the site upgrade execution. These procedures are executed inside a maintenance window.

Use the answers to the following questions to select the required upgrade procedure from **Table 7**. The right-most column indicates the section of this document that applies.

Is the DA-MP redundancy (1+1) or (N+0)? _____

Are there PCA or SBR servers to upgrade? _____

*It is recommended that the specific upgrade sections be identified **before the Maintenance window**, and sections that will not be used are “grayed out” to avoid any confusion during the MW activity.*

Record Upgrade type selected from Table 7: _____

Proceed to Section 5.3, 5.4, or 5.5 as specified in Table 7 according to the upgrade type recorded above.

Table 7: Upgrade Path Reference

| Type | Supported Configurations | Upgrade Path | Section Reference |
|------|--|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 | DSR 7.1.x/7.2 upgrade for (1+1) configuration (major or incremental) | SOAM Upgrade (1+1) | Section 5.3 |
| 2 | DSR 7.1.x/7.2 upgrade for (N+0) configuration (major or incremental) | SOAM Upgrade (N+0) | Section 5.4 |
| 5 | PCA DSR 7.1.x/7.2 upgrade (major or incremental) | PCA Upgrade | Section 5.5 |

5.2 SOAM Pre-Upgrade Activities

5.2.1 SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups

This procedure is non-intrusive and is used to perform a backup of all servers associated with the SOAM Site(s) being upgraded. It is recommended that this procedure be executed no earlier than 36 hours prior to the start of the upgrade.

Since this backup is to be used in the event of disaster recovery, any site configuration changes made after this backup should be recorded and re-entered after the disaster recovery.

Procedure 20 is an alternate procedure that can be used to backup a site using the command line. Procedure 20 should only be used by direction of MOS.

Procedure 19: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups

| | | |
|--------------------------------|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active SOAM VIP:</p> <p>Backup Site configuration data</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Required for Disaster Recovery</p> | <p>Backup SOAM database.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database to return to the Database Status screen. 3. Click to highlight the Active SOAM server, and then click Backup. The Backup and Archive screen is displayed. (NOTE: the Backup button will only be enabled when the Active server is selected.) 4. Select the Configuration checkbox. 5. Select the desired compression type. Retain the default selection unless there is a specific reason or direction to change it. 6. Enter Comments (optional). 7. Click OK. <p>NOTE: the Active SOAM can be determined by going to the Status & Manage >HA screen, and note which server is currently assigned the VIP in the "Active VIPs" field. The server having VIP assigned is the Active.</p> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active SOAM VIP:</p> <p>Save database backup</p> <p>IMPORTANT: Required for Disaster Recovery</p> | <p>Download and save backup files.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files The Files menu is displayed. 2. Click on the Active SOAM server tab. 3. Select the configuration database backup file and click the Download button. 4. If a confirmation window is displayed, click Save. 5. If the Choose File window is displayed, select a destination folder on the local workstation to store the backup file. Click Save. 6. If a Download Complete confirmation is displayed, click Close. |

Procedure 19: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups

| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|---|----------------------------|----------|--|-----------|----------------------------------|---------------|-----------------|---|---------------------------------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|----------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------|-----------------|-----|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------|-----------------|
| <p>3.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Backup run environment for site being upgraded.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Login to the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 3. Click the Backup All button. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG</th> <th>MP_SG</th> <th>SO_SG</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname</td> <td>Upgrade State</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role</td> <td>Server Role</td> <td>Function</td> <td>Application Version</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl Max HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Backup Needed Err</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.14.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Backup Needed Warn</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.14.1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Buttons: Backup, Backup All, Auto Upgrade, Accept, Report, Report All</p> | NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Backup Needed Err | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 | NO2 | Backup Needed Warn | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 |
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Backup Needed Err | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Backup Needed Warn | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>4.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>The Upgrade [Backup All] screen is displayed. This screen displays the various Network Elements, and identifies which servers are ready for backup.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the Action column, select the Back up checkbox for the Network Element to be upgraded. 2. Verify the check box for the NOAM server group is NOT checked. <p>Note: Backing up the NOAM servers at this point will overwrite the pre-upgrade backup files that are needed for backing out the target release. Do NOT backup the NOAM servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. In the Full backup options section, verify the 'Exclude' option is selected. 4. Click the Ok button. This initiates a full backup on each eligible server. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network element</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Server(s) in the proper state for backup</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td><input type="checkbox"/> Back up</td> <td>None</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up</td> <td>SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 MP3 MP4 IPFE</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Full backup options</p> <p>Database parts exclusion: <input checked="" type="radio"/> Exclude <input type="radio"/> Do not exclude</p> <p>Select "Exclude" to perform a full backup of the COMCOL run enviro in /usr/TKLC/appworks/etc/exclude_parts.d/. Select "Do not exclude" to perform a full backup of the COMCOL run backup files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt.</p> <p>Buttons: Ok, Cancel</p> | Network element | Action | Server(s) in the proper state for backup | NO_DSR_VM | <input type="checkbox"/> Back up | None | SO1_DSR_VM | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up | SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 MP3 MP4 IPFE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Network element | Action | Server(s) in the proper state for backup | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO_DSR_VM | <input type="checkbox"/> Back up | None | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SO1_DSR_VM | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Back up | SO1 SO2 MP1 MP2 MP3 MP4 IPFE | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 19: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups

| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---|------------|---------------------|----------|------------|---------|----------|---|-----|-------------------------|---------|--------------------|-----|---|------|-------------------------|---------|---------------------|-----|---|------|-------------------------|---------|---------------------|-----|---|------|-------------------------|---------|---------------------|-----|---|------|-------------------------|---------|---------------------|-----|
| <p>5.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor for backup completion</p> | <p>Monitor the backup tasks</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Upgrade screen, select the Tasks pulldown. Monitor the progress of the backups until the Network Element(s) selected in step 4 are complete. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>MP6</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>running</td> <td>Full backup on MP6</td> <td>10%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>MP11</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>running</td> <td>Full backup on MP11</td> <td>10%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>MP12</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>running</td> <td>Full backup on MP12</td> <td>10%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>MP13</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>running</td> <td>Full backup on MP13</td> <td>10%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>MP14</td> <td>Pre-upgrade full backup</td> <td>running</td> <td>Full backup on MP14</td> <td>10%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | 1 | MP6 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP6 | 10% | 1 | MP11 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP11 | 10% | 1 | MP12 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP12 | 10% | 1 | MP13 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP13 | 10% | 1 | MP14 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP14 | 10% |
| ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | MP6 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP6 | 10% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | MP11 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP11 | 10% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | MP12 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP12 | 10% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | MP13 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP13 | 10% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 1 | MP14 | Pre-upgrade full backup | running | Full backup on MP14 | 10% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>6.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify that backup files are present on each server.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the Active NOAM or SOAM GUI. Select Status & Manage > Files (<i>The Files menu is displayed</i>) Click on each Server tab, in turn For each Server, verify that the following (2) files have been created: <pre>Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2</pre> <pre>Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.UPG.tar.bz2</pre> Repeat sub-steps 1 through 4 for each site being upgraded. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

5.2.2 Alternate SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

Procedure 20 creates a backup of some or all servers in the topology. This procedure is a manual command line alternative to the GUI backup in Procedure 19.

Procedure 20: Alternate SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

| | | |
|--------------------------------|---|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure is a manual alternative backup. The procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u></p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Active SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>SSH to the Active SOAM</p> | <p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the Active SOAM:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM_VIP></pre> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Active SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>Start a screen session.</p> | <p>Enter the following commands:</p> <pre># screen</pre> <p>(The screen tool will create a no-hang-up shell session, so that the command will continue to execute if the user session is lost.)</p> |

Procedure 20: Alternate SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure is a manual alternative backup. The procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS</u> AND ASK FOR <u>UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u></p> | |
| <p>3.</p> <div style="background-color: #cccccc; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 0 auto;"></div> | <p>Active SOAM CLI:</p> <p>Execute a backup of all servers managed from the SOAM to be upgraded.</p> | <p>Execute the backupAllHosts utility on the Active SOAM. This utility will remotely access each specified server, and run the backup command for that server.</p> <p>The --site parameter allows the user to backup all servers associated with a given SOAM site to be upgraded:</p> <p>WARNING: Failure to include the --site parameter with the backupAllHosts command will result in overwriting the NOAM backup file created in Section 3.3.5. Backing out to the previous release is not possible if the file is overwritten.</p> <pre>\$ /usr/TKLC/dpi/bin/backupAllHosts --site=<NENName></pre> <p>...where <NENName> is the Network Element Name (NENName) as seen using the following command:</p> <pre>\$ iqt NetworkElement</pre> <p>The following output will be generated upon execution of either of the above options:</p> <pre>Do you want to remove the old backup files (if exists) from all the servers (y/[n])?y</pre> <p>It may take from 10 to 30 minutes for this command to complete, depending upon the number of servers and the data in the database. Do not proceed until the backup on each server is completed.</p> <p>Output similar to the following will indicate successful completion:</p> <pre>Script Completed. Status: HOSTNAME STATUS ----- HPC3blade02 PASS HPC3blade01 PASS HPC3blade03 PASS HPC3blade04 PASS</pre> <p>(Errors will also report back to the command line.)</p> <p>NOTE: There is no progress indication for this command; only the final report when it completes.</p> |
| <p>4.</p> <div style="background-color: #cccccc; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 0 auto;"></div> | <p>Active SOAM CLI:</p> <p>Exit the screen session.</p> | <pre># exit</pre> <p>[screen is terminating]</p> <p>NOTE: "screen -ls" is used to show active screen sessions on a server, and "screen -dr" is used to re-enter a disconnected screen session.</p> |

Procedure 20: Alternate SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backup

| | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure is a manual alternative backup. The procedure conducts a full backup of the Configuration database and run environment on site being upgraded, so that each server has the latest data to perform a backout, if necessary.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u></p> | |
| 5. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>ALTERNATIVE METHOD (Optional)</p> <p><u>Server CLI:</u></p> <p>If needed, the Alternative backup method can be executed on each individual server instead of using the “backupAllHosts” script.</p> | <p>ALTERNATIVE: A manual back up can be executed on each server individually, rather than using the script above. To do this, log into each server in the site individually, and execute the following command to manually generate a full backup on that server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/full_backup</pre> <p>Output similar to the following will indicate successful completion:</p> <pre>Success: Full backup of COMCOL run env has completed. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullDBParts. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt. Archive file /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/Backup.dsr.blade01.FullRunEnv. SYSTEM_OAM.20140617_021502.UPG.tar.bz2 written in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt.</pre> |
| 6. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify that backup files are present on each server.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the Active NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Files The Files menu is displayed 3. Click on each server tab, in turn 4. For each server, verify that the following (2) files have been created: <pre>Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullDBParts.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>. UPG.tar.bz2 Backup.DSR.<server_name>.FullRunEnv.NETWORK_OAMP.<time_stamp>.U PG.tar.bz2</pre> <p>Repeat sub-steps 1 through 4 for each site.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.2.3 SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Checks

This section provides procedures to verify the health of the SOAM site prior to upgrade. Procedure 21 is the primary procedure to be executed when upgrading to release 7.2. Alternate release-specific procedures are provided, to be used as directed.

5.2.3.1 SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2

This procedure is used when the NOAMs are on Release 7.2. The procedure is non-intrusive and performs a health check of the site prior to upgrading.

Procedure 21: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2

| S T E P # 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | This procedure performs a Health Check prior to upgrading the SOAMs. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND</u> ASK FOR <u>UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u> . | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|---------------|---------------|--------------------------|-----|-------------------|-----|---------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|-----|-------------------|----------|--------|--------|-----|--------------|
| | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Run health checks</p> <p>This procedure will run the automated pre-upgrade Health Checks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade screen is displayed. 2. Select the SOAM server group tab. 3. Select the Active SOAM. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter Status Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl Max HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SO2</td> <td>Ready Norm</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>System OAM SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SO1</td> <td>Ready Norm</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>System OAM SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Click the Checkup button. The Upgrade [Checkup] screen is displayed. 5. Under Health check options, select the Pre Upgrade option. 6. Use the Upgrade ISO pulldown to select the target release ISO. 7. Click Ok. Control returns to the Upgrade screen. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> <p>Info</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SO2</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p> <input type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input checked="" type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Post Upgrade </p> <p>Upgrade ISO: DSR-7.2.0.0.0_72.16.5-x86_64.iso</p> <p>Upgrade health check type. Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p>OK Cancel</p> </div> | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | SO2 | Ready Norm | Active N/A | System OAM SO1_DSR_VM | OAM | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | SO1 | Ready Norm | Standby N/A | System OAM SO1_DSR_VM | OAM | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | Hostname | Action | Status | SO2 | Health Check |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SO2 | Ready Norm | Active N/A | System OAM SO1_DSR_VM | OAM | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SO1 | Ready Norm | Standby N/A | System OAM SO1_DSR_VM | OAM | 7.1.1.0.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Action | Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SO2 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO1_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 21: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2

| <p>2</p> <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Monitor health check progress</p> | <p>Monitor for the completion of the Health Check.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Tasks dropdown to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO_SGroup> PreUpgrade Health Check. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column will display a hyperlink to the Health Check report. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>SO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG</th> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>8</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>SO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_SO_SG_20160309-132455-EST.bt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>7</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-122153-EST.bt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>6</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.bt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | SO_SG | IPFE_SG | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | 8 | NO1 | SO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_SO_SG_20160309-132455-EST.bt | 100% | | | 7 | NO1 | NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-122153-EST.bt | 100% | | | 6 | NO1 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.bt | 100% |
|--|--|-------|----------|--------------------------------|------------|--|------------|---------|----------|--|--|---|-----|-------------------------------|-----------|---|------|--|--|---|-----|--------------------------------|-----------|--|------|--|--|---|-----|-------------------------------|-----------|---|------|
| SO_SG | IPFE_SG | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 8 | NO1 | SO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_SO_SG_20160309-132455-EST.bt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 7 | NO1 | NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-122153-EST.bt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | 6 | NO1 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | PreUpgrade_HealthCheck_NO_SG_20160309-115634-EST.bt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>3</p> <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p><u>Analyze health check results</u></p> | <p>Analyze Health Check report for failures. If the Health Check report status is anything other than "Pass", the Health Check logs must be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. Select the file named "UpgradeHealthCheck.log" and click View. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance as described in Appendix J. <p>If the health check log contains the message "Unable to execute Health Check on <Active SOAM hostname>", perform the alternate health check in Procedure 22.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

5.2.3.2 SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

This procedure is an alternate health check that is used when upgrading to Release 7.2 and the SOAMs are on Release 7.0.1 or 7.1.x. The procedure is non-intrusive and performs a health check of the site prior to upgrading.

Procedure 22: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure performs a Health Check prior to upgrading the SOAMs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| <p>1.</p> <div style="background-color: white; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px;"></div> | <p><u>ACTIVE SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>Verify SOAM pre-Upgrade Status</p> | <p>Run health checks on Active SOAM.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the Active SOAM: <pre>ssh <SOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 3.</p> Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck preUpgradeHealthCheckOnSoam</pre> <p>This command creates three files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck/ with the filename format:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_ServerStatusReport_<date-time>.xml <SOserver_name>_ComAgentConnStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If any alarms are present in the system:</p> <pre><NOserver_name>_AlarmStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If the system is PDRA, one additional file is generated:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_SBRStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> If the message “Server <hostname> needs operator attention before upgrade” is output, inspect the Server Status Report to determine the reason for the message. If the following message appears in the Server Status Report, the alert can be ignored: Server <hostname> has no alarm with DB State as Normal and Process state as Kill. <p>Note: If any server status is not as expected, do not proceed with the upgrade. It is recommended to contact MOS for guidance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Keep these reports for future reference. These reports will be compared to alarm and status reports after the upgrade is complete. |
| <p>2.</p> <div style="background-color: white; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px;"></div> | <p><u>ACTIVE SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>Capture Diameter Maintenance Status</p> | <p>Capture Diameter Maintenance status.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck diameterMaintStatus</pre> <p>This command will output a series of messages, providing Diameter Maintenance status. Capture this output and save for later use. Note: the output is also captured in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck.log.</p> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> |

Procedure 22: SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>ACTIVE SOAM CLI:</u></p> <p>View DA-MP Status</p> | <p>Capture DA-MP status.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck daMpStatus</pre> <p>This command outputs status to the screen for review.</p> <p>Note: The message "FIPS integrity verification test failed" may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> 2. Verify all Peer MPs are available 3. Note the number of Total Connections Established _____ |
| <p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>ACTIVE SOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Capture Diameter Configuration on Active SOAM GUI</p> | <p>Export Diameter configuration.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Main Menu > Diameter Common > Export. 2. Capture and archive the Diameter data by setting the Export Application drop down entry to "ALL". 3. Verify the requested data is exported using the tasks button at the top of the screen. 4. Select the File Management button to view the files available for download. Download all of the exported files to the client machine, or use the SCP utility to download the files from the Active NOAM to the client machine. |
| <p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Capture Data for each SOAM Site</p> | <p>Repeat steps 1 through 11 for each configured SOAM Site to be upgraded.</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |

5.2.4 Disable Site Provisioning

This procedure disables Site Provisioning in preparation for upgrading the site.



!! WARNING!!

THIS PROCEDURE MAY ONLY BE PERFORMED IN THE MAINTENANCE WINDOW IMMEDIATELY BEFORE THE START OF THE SOAM SITE UPGRADE.

Procedure 23: Disable Site Provisioning

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>S</p> <p>T</p> <p>E</p> <p>P</p> <p>#</p> | <p>This procedure disables provisioning for the SOAM.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| <p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active SOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Disable Site Provisioning</p> | <p>Disable Site Provisioning at the SOAM.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI of the site to be upgraded. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed. 3. Click the Disable Site Provisioning button. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Site Provisioning; a yellow information box should also be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 004] - Site provisioning has been manually disabled. <p>The Active SOAM server will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | |

SOAM UPGRADE ACTIVE / STANDBY (1+1)

Use this section to upgrade Active/Standby (1+1) configurations.

5.3 SOAM Upgrade (1+1)

This section contains the steps required to perform an upgrade (major or incremental) for a DSR site with an SOAM, and an Active/Standby (1+1) DA-MP redundancy configuration.

During the Site upgrade, site provisioning is disabled. Provisioning will be re-enabled at the completion of the site upgrade.

Global provisioning can be re-enabled between scheduled maintenance windows.

Table 8: Site Upgrade Execution Overview.

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|--|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 19 | 0:10-0:20 | 0:10-0:20 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups | None |
| Procedure 21 or Procedure 22 | 0:05-0:10 0:10-0:15 | 0:15-0:30 0:20-0:35 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2 or SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x | None None |
| Procedure 23 | 0:01 | 0:16-0:36 | Disable Site Provisioning | Site Provisioning Disabled, No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 24 | 0:02-0:05 | 0:18-0:41 | Upgrade SOAM Pre-Checks (1+1) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 25 or Procedure 26 | 0:40-1:20 | 0:58-2:01 | Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, ASG) or Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, manual) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 27 or Procedure 28 | 1:20-1:40 | 2:18-3:41 | Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, ASG) or Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, manual) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded. |
| Procedure 29 | 0:40-2:40 | 2:58-6:21 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (1+1) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded. |
| Procedure 55 | 0:01 | 2:59-6:22 | Allow Site Provisioning | Site Provisioning Enabled (SOAM). |
| Procedure 57 | 0:10-0:15 | 3:09-6:37 | Verify Post-Upgrade Status | None |



!! WARNING!!

THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE COMPLETED BEFORE THE START OF SOAM UPGRADE:

Procedure 19; [Procedure 21 or Procedure 22]; Procedure 23

5.3.1 Upgrade SOAMs (1+1)

For each site in the DSR, the SOAM(s) and associated MPs should be upgraded within a single maintenance window.

This section provides the procedures to upgrade both SOAMs. The SOAMs can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for SOAM upgrade is the automated upgrade (Procedure 25). The manual upgrade (Procedure 26) option is provided as an alternative upgrade method.

Regardless of which SOAM upgrade option is used, Procedure 24 is required to ensure site provisioning is disabled. To use the automated SOAM upgrade, execute Procedure 25. To upgrade the SOAMs manually, execute Procedure 26.

Procedure 24: Upgrade SOAM Pre-Checks (1+1)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure verifies traffic status, and verifies that Site Provisioning is disabled, in preparation for upgrading the SOAMs. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u> . | |
| 1. | <u>Active SOAM VIP:</u> <input type="checkbox"/> Verify Traffic status | View KPI to verify traffic status. 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > KPIs . 3. Inspect KPI reports to verify traffic is at the expected condition. |
| 2. | <u>Active SOAM VIP:</u> <input type="checkbox"/> Verify Site Provisioning is disabled | Verify that Site Provisioning was properly disabled in Procedure 23. 1. In the GUI status bar, where it says “ <i>Connected using ...</i> ”, check for the message “ Site Provisioning disabled ” If the message is present, continue with the next procedure per Table 8, otherwise, execute: Procedure 23: Disable Site Provisioning |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.3.1.1 Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, ASG)

Procedure 25 is the recommended method for upgrading the SOAMs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 8.

Procedure 25: Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, ASG)

| | | |
|---|--|---------------------------|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the SOAM(s) using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE . | |
| | 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade SOAM Server Group |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NOTE: Once the Network Element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a Server Group and re-added, the server must be restored by way of Disaster Recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server will be inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.3.1.2 Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, manual)

Procedure 26 is used to upgrade the SOAM Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 25. If the SOAM Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 25, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 8.

Procedure 26: Upgrade SOAMs (1+1, manual)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the SOAM(s) in a DSR using the manual upgrade method. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE . | |
| | 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade Standby SOAM |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade Active SOAM | Upgrade the Active SOAM server using Upgrade Single Server procedure : Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 8. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NOTE: Once the Network Element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a Server Group and re-added, the server must be restored by way of Disaster Recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server will be inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.3.2 Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1)

This section provides the procedures to upgrade the DA-MPs in an Active/Standby (1+1) configuration. In the Active/Standby configuration, the Standby DA-MP is upgraded first, followed by the Active.

The DA-MP Server Group can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for DA-MP upgrade is the automated upgrade (Procedure 27). The manual upgrade (Procedure 28) is provided as an alternative upgrade method.

To use the automated DA-MP upgrade, execute Procedure 27.

To upgrade the DA-MPs manually, execute Procedure 28.

5.3.2.1 Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, ASG)

Procedure 27 is the recommended method for upgrading the DA-MPs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 8.

Procedure 27: Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, ASG)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the DA-MP servers using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active NOAM VIP:</u> Verify and Record the status of the DA-MP before upgrade | Verify and record the status and hostname of the Active and Standby DA-MPs. 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > HA. 2. Record the hostname of the Standby DA-MP _____ 3. Record the hostname of the Active DA-MP _____ NOTE: The Active DA-MP server can be identified by looking for the “VIP” label. The server with VIP in the row is the Active DA-MP. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active NOAM VIP:</u> Upgrade the DA-MP Server Group | Upgrade the DA-MP Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Serial upgrade mode Execute Appendix E – Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E , return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 8. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.3.2.2 Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, manual)

Procedure 28 is used to upgrade the DA-MP Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 27. If the DA-MP Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 27, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 8.

Procedure 28: Upgrade DA-MPs (1+1, manual)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the DA-MP(s) using the manual upgrade method.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify and Record the status of the DA-MP before upgrade</p> | <p>Verify and record the status and hostname of the Active and Standby DA-MPs.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Status & Manage > HA. 2. Record the hostname of the Standby DA-MP _____ 3. Record the hostname of the Active DA-MP _____ <p>NOTE: The Active DA-MP server can be identified by looking for the “VIP” label. The server with VIP in the row is the Active DA-MP.</p> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Upgrade the standby DA-MP server</p> | <p>Upgrade the Standby DA-MP server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure:</p> <p>Execute Appendix D - Single Server Upgrade for the Standby DA-MP.</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Upgrade the Active DA-MP server</p> | <p>Upgrade the Active DA-MP server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure.</p> <p>Execute Appendix D - Single Server Upgrade for the Active DA-MP.</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 8.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.3.3 Upgrade SS7-MPs (1+1)

The following procedure is used to upgrade the SS7-MPs in the SS7-IWF server groups. The effect on the Diameter network traffic must be considered, since any SS7-MP being upgraded will not be handling live traffic.

Procedure 29 must be executed for all configured SS7-MPs at a site. To upgrade multiple SS7-MPs in parallel, Procedure 29 must be executed for each selected server group.

Procedure 29: Upgrade SS7-MPs (1+1)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the SS7-MPs. | |
| | Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. | |
| | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| | 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify all the SS7-MPs to be upgraded together, if equipped |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade selected SS7-MPs | Upgrade the selected SS7-MPs, executing the Upgrade Single Server procedure, once for each SS7-MP, in parallel. Execute Appendix D: Upgrade Single Server After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D for all selected SS7-MPs, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all SS7-MP servers | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the next set of SS7-MP servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |



THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE EXECUTED AT THE COMPLETION OF EACH SOAM SITE UPGRADE:

- Procedure 55: Allow Site Provisioning
- Procedure 57: Verify Post-Upgrade Status



AFTER ALL SOAM SITES IN THE TOPOLOGY HAVE COMPLETED UPGRADE, THE UPGRADE MAY BE ACCEPTED USING THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE:

- Procedure 67: Accept Upgrade

SOAM UPGRADE MULTI-ACTIVE (N+0)

Use this section to upgrade Multi-Active (N+0) configurations.


5.4 SOAM Upgrade (N+0)

This section contains the steps required to perform an upgrade (major or incremental) for a DSR site with an SOAM, and a multiple-active (N+0) DA-MP configuration.

During the Site upgrade, site provisioning is disabled. It will be re-enabled at the completion of the site upgrade.

Table 9: Site Upgrade Execution Overview (N+0)

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|---|--|
| | This Step | Cum. | | |
| Procedure 19 | 0:10-0:20 | 0:10-0:20 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups | None |
| Procedure 21 or Procedure 22 | 0:05-0:10 0:10-0:15 | 0:15-0:30 0:20-0:35 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2 or SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x | None None |
| Procedure 23 | 0:01 | 0:16-0:36 | Disable Site Provisioning | Site Provisioning Disabled, No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 30 | 0:02-0:05 | 0:18-0:41 | Upgrade Pre-Checks (N+0) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 31 or Procedure 32 | 0:40-1:20 | 0:58-2:01 | Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, ASG) or Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, manual) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 33 or Procedure 34 | 0:40-2:40 | 1:38-4:41 | Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, ASG) or Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, manual) | Traffic handled by MP(s) not being upgraded. |
| Procedure 35 | 0:20-2:40 | 1:58-7:21 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (N+0) | Traffic will not be handled by MP(s) being upgraded |
| Procedure 36 | 0:20-1:20 | 2:18-8:41 | Upgrade IPFE(s) (N+0) | Traffic handled by MP(s) not being upgraded |
| Procedure 55 | 0:01 | 2:19-8:42 | Allow Site Provisioning | Site Provisioning Enabled (SOAM). |
| Procedure 57 | 0:10-0:15 | 2:29-8:57 | Verify Post-Upgrade Status | None |

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>!! WARNING!!</p> <p>THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE COMPLETED BEFORE THE START OF SOAM UPGRADE:</p> <p><i>Procedure 19; [Procedure 21 or Procedure 22]; Procedure 23</i></p> |
|---|--|

5.4.1 Upgrade SOAMs (N+0)

For each site in the DSR, the SOAM(s) and associated MPs and IPFEs should be upgraded within a single maintenance window.

This section provides the procedures to disable site provisioning and upgrade both SOAMs. The SOAMs can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for SOAM upgrade is the automated upgrade (Procedure 31). The manual upgrade (Procedure 32) option is provided as an alternative upgrade method.

Regardless of which SOAM upgrade option is used, Procedure 30 is required to ensure site provisioning is disabled. To use the automated SOAM upgrade, execute Procedure 31. To upgrade the SOAMs manually, execute Procedure 32.

Procedure 30: Upgrade Pre-Checks (N+0)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure verifies traffic status, and verifies that Site Provisioning is disabled, preparation for upgrading the SOAMs. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS</u> AND ASK FOR <u>UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u> . | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active SOAM VIP:</u> Verify Traffic status | Verify traffic status at the SOAM. 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Inspect KPI reports to verify traffic is at the expected condition. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active SOAM VIP:</u> Verify Site Provisioning is disabled | Verify that Site Provisioning was properly disabled in Procedure 23. 1. In the GUI status bar, where it says “ <i>Connected using ...</i> ”, check for the message “ Site Provisioning disabled ” If the message is present, skip to the next procedure per Table 9; otherwise, execute Procedure 23: Disable Site Provisioning |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.4.1.1 Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, ASG)

Procedure 31 is the recommended method for upgrading the SOAMs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 9.

Procedure 31: Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, ASG)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SOAM(s) using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade SOAM Server Group</p> | <p>Upgrade the SOAM Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Serial upgrade mode <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 9.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NOTE: Once the Network Element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a Server Group and re-added, the server must be restored by way of Disaster Recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server will be inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.4.1.2 Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, manual)

Procedure 32 is used to upgrade the SOAM Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 31. If the SOAM Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 31, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 9.

Procedure 32: Upgrade SOAMs (N+0, manual)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SOAM(s) in a DSR using the manual upgrade method.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade Standby SOAM</p> | <p>Upgrade the Standby SOAM server using Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix D - Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade Active SOAM</p> | <p>Upgrade the Active SOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix D - Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 9.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NOTE: Once the Network Element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a Server Group and re-added, the server must be restored by way of Disaster Recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server will be inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.4.2 Upgrade Multiple DA-MPs (N+0)

This section provides the procedures to upgrade the DA-MPs in a multi-active DA-MP cluster. In a multi-active DA-MP cluster, all of the DA-MPs are Active; there are no Standby DA-MPs. The effect on the Diameter network traffic must be considered, since any DA-MP being upgraded will not be handling live traffic.

The DA-MP Server Group can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for DA-MP upgrade is the automated upgrade (Procedure 33). The manual upgrade (Procedure 34) is provided as an alternative upgrade method.

To use the automated DA-MP upgrade, execute Procedure 33.

To upgrade the DA-MPs manually, execute Procedure 34.

If the DSR being upgraded is running OFCS, the DA-MPs must be upgraded manually to ensure that the DA-MPs are upgraded on an enclosure basis. That is, upgrade the DA-MPs in one enclosure first, and only after the first enclosure has been successfully upgraded should the DA-MPs in the second enclosure be upgraded. This approach will ensure service is not affected.

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>IF THE DA-MPs ARE ON RELEASE 5.1, UPGRADE THE DA-MPs USING PROCEDURE 34. DO NOT USE THE AUTOMATED SERVER GROUP UPGRADE OPTION TO UPGRADE THE DA-MPs.</p> |
|---|--|

| | |
|--|---|
|  | <p>!! WARNING!! THE IPFEs AND THE DA-MPs MUST BE UPGRADED IN THE SAME MAINTENANCE WINDOW</p> |
|--|---|

5.4.2.1 Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, ASG)

Procedure 33 is the recommended method for upgrading the SOAMs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 9.

Procedure 33: Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, ASG)

| | |
|--|---|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure upgrades the DA-MP servers using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p><u>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</u></p> |
| <p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Upgrade DA-MP Server Group</p> <p>Upgrade the DA-MP Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Bulk upgrade mode • Select an Availability setting of no less than 50% <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 9.</p> |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | |

5.4.2.2 Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, manual)

Procedure 34 is used to upgrade the DA-MP Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 33. If the DA-MP Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 33, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 9.

Procedure 34 must be executed for all configured DA-MPs of a site, regardless of how the DA-MPs are grouped for upgrade. So if 16 DA-MPs are upgraded four at a time, then Procedure 34 must be executed four distinct times.

Procedure 34: Upgrade DA-MPs (N+0, manual)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the DA-MP servers using the manual upgrade method. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE . | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify all the DA-MPs to be upgraded together | From the data captured in Table 3, 1. Pick the "DSR (multi-active cluster)" Server Group to be upgraded. 2. Identify the servers to be upgraded in the selected Server Group. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade Active DA-MPs | Upgrade up to (½) one half (no more than 50%) of the DA-MP servers in parallel using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure : NOTE: It is recommended that the DA-MP Leader be upgraded in the last group of servers to minimize DA-MP Leader role changes. Execute Appendix E - Upgrade Multiple Servers After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E , for all selected DA-MPs, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all DA-MP servers | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the next set of DA-MP servers to be upgraded in parallel. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.4.3 Upgrade SS7-MPs (N+0)

The following procedure is used to upgrade the SS7-MPs in the SS7-IWF server groups. The effect on the Diameter network traffic must be considered, since any SS7-MP being upgraded will not be handling live traffic.

Procedure 35 must be executed for all configured SS7-MPs at a site. To upgrade multiple SS7-MPs in parallel, Procedure 35 must be executed for each selected server group.

Procedure 35: Upgrade SS7-MPs (N+0)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the SS7-MPs. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify all the SS7-MPs to be upgraded together, if equipped | If SS7-MPs are deployed, choose the number of MP(s) on which upgrade can be executed in parallel, considering traffic. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade selected SS7-MPs | Upgrade the selected SS7-MPs, executing the Upgrade Single Server procedure, once for each SS7-MP, in parallel. <p style="text-align: center;">Execute Appendix D: Upgrade Single Server</p> After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D for all selected SS7-MPs, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all SS7-MP servers | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the next set of SS7-MP servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.4.4 Upgrade IPFE(s) (N+0)

If none of the signaling network elements in the DSR being upgraded has IPFE servers installed, skip this section and proceed to next procedure. Otherwise, the following procedure must be executed independently for each signaling network element that has IPFE servers installed.

Procedure 36: Upgrade IPFE(s) (N+0)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the IPFE(s). | |
| | Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. | |
| | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| | 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify IPFE upgrade order |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade IPFE server | Upgrade the IPFE identified in step 1, using the Upgrade Single Server procedure. Execute Appendix D - Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all IPFE servers | Repeat step 2 for the remaining IPFE servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |



THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE EXECUTED AT THE COMPLETION OF EACH SOAM SITE UPGRADE:

- Procedure 55: Allow Site Provisioning
- Procedure 57: Verify Post-Upgrade Status



AFTER ALL SOAM SITES IN THE TOPOLOGY HAVE COMPLETED UPGRADE, THE UPGRADE MAY BE ACCEPTED USING THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE:

- Procedure 67: Accept Upgrade

PCA SITE 1 UPGRADE

Use this section to upgrade Site 1 of a PCA System

5.5 PCA Upgrade

This section contains the steps required to upgrade the following PCA specific configuration:


- 2 sites each with Geo-Diverse SOAM and P-SBR servers (Active/Standby/Spare plus an optional 2nd spare)
- PCA MP's
- SS7-MPs

During the Site upgrade, site provisioning is disabled and will be re-enabled at the completion of the site upgrade. Table 10 provides the upgrade overview for PCA Site 1.

Table 10: Site Upgrade Execution Overview (PCA, Site 1).

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|--------------------|-----------------------|------------|--|--|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 19 | 0:10-0:20 | 0:10-0:20 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups | None |
| Procedure 21 | 0:05-0:10 | 0:15-0:30 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2 | None |
| or Procedure 22 | 0:10--0:15 | 0:20-0:35 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x | None |
| Procedure 23 | 0:01 | 0:16-0:36 | Disable Site Provisioning | Site Provisioning Disabled, No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 37 | 0:01-0:05 | 0:17-0:41 | Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA – Site 1) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 38 | 0:40-1:20 | 0:57-2:01 | Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, ASG) | No Traffic Impact |
| or Procedure 39 | | | Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, manual) | |
| Procedure 40 | 0:40-2:40 | 1:37-4:41 | Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, ASG) | No Traffic Impact |
| or Procedure 41 | | | Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, manual) | |
| Procedure 42 | 0:40-2:40 | 2:17-7:21 | Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, ASG) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded |
| or Procedure 43 | | | Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, manual) | |
| Procedure 44 | 0:40-2:40 | 2:57-10:01 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 1) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded |
| Procedure 45 | 0:20-1:20 | 3:17-11:21 | Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA – Site 1) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded. |

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 55 | 0:01 | 3:18-11:22 | Allow Site Provisioning | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 57 | 0:10-0:15 | 3:28-11:37 | Verify Post-Upgrade Status | No Traffic Impact |



!! WARNING!! THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE COMPLETED BEFORE THE START OF SOAM UPGRADE:
Procedure 19; [Procedure 21 or Procedure 22]; Procedure 23

5.5.1 PCA SOAM Upgrade - Site 1

For PCA SOAM Site 1, the SOAM(s), the SBRs, the IPFEs, and the associated MPs should be upgraded within a single maintenance window. **If this is not possible, then it is required that all servers within each Server Group share the same release at the end of the maintenance window (i.e. do not split server release levels within the same SG).**

5.5.1.1 SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA - Site 1)

This procedure verifies the traffic status to ensure traffic is running as expected prior to upgrading the site. Site provisioning is verified to be disabled as well.

Procedure 37: Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA – Site 1)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure verifies traffic status, and verifies that Site Provisioning is disabled, in preparation for upgrading the SOAMs. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. | SOAM VIP: <input type="checkbox"/> Verify Traffic status | Verify traffic status at the SOAM. 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Inspect KPI reports to verify traffic is at the expected condition. |
| 2. | SOAM VIP: <input type="checkbox"/> Verify that site Provisioning is disabled | Verify that Site Provisioning was properly disabled in Procedure 23. 1. In the GUI status bar, where it says “ <i>Connected using ...</i> ”, check for the message “ Site Provisioning disabled ” If the message is present, proceed to the next procedure per Table 10, otherwise, execute Procedure 23: Disable Site Provisioning |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.1.2 Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)

The SOAMs can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for SOAM upgrade is the automated server group upgrade.

Procedure 38 is the recommended method for upgrading the SOAMs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 10.

Procedure 38: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the SOAM(s) using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u> . | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade SOAM Server Group | NOTE: the Spare servers of this server group will be located at different sites. Upgrade the SOAM Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Bulk upgrade mode <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 10.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NOTE: Once the Network Element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a Server Group and re-added, the server must be restored by way of Disaster Recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server will be inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.5.1.3 Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

Procedure 39 is used to upgrade the SOAM Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 38. If the SOAM Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 38, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 10.

Procedure 39: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the SOAMs using the manual upgrade method. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</u> . | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade Standby SOAM and Spare SOAM in parallel | NOTE: the Spare servers of this server group will be located at different sites. Upgrade the standby SOAM and Spare SOAM servers in parallel using the Upgrade Multiple Server procedure. Use the manual upgrade option. Do not use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |

Procedure 39: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

| | | |
|---|---------------------|--|
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade Active SOAM | <p>Upgrade the Active SOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix E -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 10.</p> |
| <i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i> | | |

5.5.2 Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1)

This section provides the procedures to upgrade the SBR Server Group for Site 1. The SBRs can be upgraded manually, under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for SBR upgrade is the automated server group upgrade (Procedure 40). The manual upgrade (Procedure 41) option is provided as an alternate upgrade method.

To use the automated SBR upgrade, execute Procedure 40.

To upgrade the SBRs manually, execute Procedure 41.

5.5.2.1 Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)

Procedure 40 is the recommended method for upgrading the SBRs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 10.

Procedure 40: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SBR Server Group for Site 1 using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify the SBR Server Group(s) to Upgrade | <p>1. From the data captured in Table 3, identify the SBR server group(s) to upgrade. One server group can be executed at a time or multiple server groups can be executed simultaneously.</p> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade SBR Server Group(s) identified in step 1 of this procedure. | <p>NOTE: The Spare SBRs of this server group will be located at different sites.</p> <p>1. Upgrade the SBR Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Grouped Bulk upgrade mode • Select an Availability setting of no less than 50% <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all SBR Server Groups with Active, Standby in Site 1 and Spare in Site 2 (and an optional 2 nd Spare in Site 3) | <p>Repeat step 2 for all remaining binding and session server groups to be upgraded.</p> |
| <i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i> | | |

5.5.2.2 Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, manual)


Procedure 41 is used to upgrade the SBR Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 40. If the SBR Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 40, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 10.

Note: Before upgrading the Active SBR, it is imperative that the database audit of the Spare and Standby servers complete successfully. Failure to comply could result in a loss of session data.

Procedure 41: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SBR Server Group for Site 1 using the manual upgrade method.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|--|--|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------------------|-------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|------------|--------|--------|-----------------|------------|---------|--------|-----------------|-------------|-------|--------|-----------------|
| 1. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Identify the SBR Server Group(s) to Upgrade</p> | <p>Identify the Active, Standby, and Spare SBR servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the data captured in Table 3, identify the server group(s) to upgrade. One server group can be executed at a time or multiple server groups can be executed simultaneously. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Main Menu > Policy and Charging > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open each server group chosen in sub-step 1. Note which server is Active, Standby and Spare (as designated by the Resource HA Role) for each server group chosen for upgrade. The following figure provides an example: <p style="text-align: center;"> GTR-SBR-1A - Active GTR-SBR-1B - Standby GTR-SBR-1Sp - Spare </p> <p>Main Menu: Policy and Charging -> Maintenance -> SBR Status</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Filter ▾</p> <p>PCA_MATED_SITES</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group Name</th> <th>Resource Domain Name</th> <th>Resource Domain Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>☐ GTR_SBR_SG_A</td> <td>PCA_SESSION</td> <td>Policy and Charging Session</td> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Name</th> <th>Resource HA Role</th> <th>Congestion Level</th> <th>Sub Resources Hosted</th> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-SBR-1A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-SBR-1B</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NSX-SBR-1Sp</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> <p>NOTE: SBR servers have two High Availability policies: one for controlling replication of session or binding data, and one for receipt of replicated configuration data from the NOAM and SOAM GUIs. During this upgrade procedure, ONLY the High Availability policy for replication of session or binding data is important. This means that the SBR Status screen MUST be used to determine the High Availability status (Active, Standby, or Spare) of SBR servers. The HA Status screen and the OAM Max HA Role column on the Upgrade screen must NOT be used because they only show the status of the configuration replication policy.</p> <p>Because the two High Availability policies run independently, it is possible that a given server might be Standby or Spare for the session and binding replication policy, but Active for the configuration replication policy. When this happens, it is necessary to ignore warnings on the Upgrade screen about selecting what it views as the Active server (for the configuration replication policy).</p> | Server Group Name | Resource Domain Name | Resource Domain Profile | ☐ GTR_SBR_SG_A | PCA_SESSION | Policy and Charging Session | Server Name | Resource HA Role | Congestion Level | Sub Resources Hosted | GTR-SBR-1A | Active | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | GTR-SBR-1B | Standby | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | NSX-SBR-1Sp | Spare | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 |
| Server Group Name | Resource Domain Name | Resource Domain Profile | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| ☐ GTR_SBR_SG_A | PCA_SESSION | Policy and Charging Session | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server Name | Resource HA Role | Congestion Level | Sub Resources Hosted | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GTR-SBR-1A | Active | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GTR-SBR-1B | Standby | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NSX-SBR-1Sp | Spare | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 41: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| <p>2.</p> <p>Upgrade Spare SBR Server identified in step 1 of this procedure.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Upgrade Spare SBR Server identified in step 1 of this procedure.</p> | <p>NOTE: The Spare SBRs of this server group will be located at different sites.</p> <p>1. Upgrade the Spare SBR server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix D —Upgrade Single Server Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point to monitor server status.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <p>2. Navigate to Main Menu > Policy and Charging > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded.</p> <p>NOTE: After executing Appendix D, the Spare SBR will temporarily disappear from the SBR Status screen. When the server comes back online, it will reappear on the screen with a status of “Out of Service”.</p> <p>3. Monitor the Resource HA Role status of the Spare server. Wait for the status to transition from “Out of Service” to “Spare”.</p> <p>4. If the system is equipped with a second Spare SBR server, repeat sub-steps 1 thru 3 for the other spare.</p> <p>Caution: Do not proceed to step 3 until the Resource HA Role of the Spare SBR server returns to “Spare”.</p> |
| <p>3.</p> <p>Upgrade Standby SBR Server identified in step 1 of this procedure.</p> | <p>Upgrade Standby SBR Server identified in step 1 of this procedure.</p> | <p>Upgrade the Standby SBR server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix D - Upgrade Single Server Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |
|  | | <p>!WARNING! Failure to comply with step 4 and step 5 may result in the loss of PCA traffic, resulting in service impact</p> |
| <p>4.</p> <p>Verify Standby SBR server status</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify Standby SBR server status</p> | <p>1. Navigate to Main Menu > Policy and Charging > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded.</p> <p>NOTE: After executing Appendix D, the Standby SBR will temporarily disappear from the SBR Status screen, and the Spare server will assume the Standby role. When the upgraded server comes back online, it will reappear on the screen with a status of “Out of Service”.</p> <p>2. Monitor the Resource HA Role status of the upgraded server. Wait for the status to transition from “Out of Service” to “Standby”.</p> <p>Caution: Do not proceed to step 5 until the Resource HA Role of the upgraded server transitions to “Standby”.</p> |

Procedure 41: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 5. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify that bulk download is complete between Active SBR to Standby SBR and Spare SBR</p> | <p>Verify that the bulk download from the Active SBR to the Standby and Spare SBRs completes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Main Menu > Alarm & Event > View History 2. Export the Event Log using the following filter: Server Group: Choose the SBR group that is in upgrade Display Filter: Event ID = 31127 – DB Replication Audit Complete Collection Interval: X hours ending in current time, where X is the time from upgrade completion of the Standby and Spare servers to the current time. 3. Wait for all instances of Event 31127: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 for the Spare binding SBR • 1 for the Spare session SBR • 1 for the 3rd site Spare binding SBR (if equipped) • 1 for the 3rd site Spare session SBR (if equipped) <p>NOTE: There is an expected loss of traffic depending on size of the bulk download. This must be noted along with events captured.</p> |
| 6. | <p>Upgrade Active SBR Server as identified in Step 1 of this procedure</p> | <p>Upgrade the Active SBR server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |
| 7. | <p>Repeat steps 1 through 6 for all SBR Server Groups with Active, Standby in Site 1 and Spare in Site 2</p> | <p>Repeat steps 1 through 6 for all remaining binding and session server groups to be upgraded.</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |



!! WARNING!! THE IPFEs AND THE DA-MPs MUST BE UPGRADED IN THE SAME MAINTENANCE WINDOW

5.5.3 Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1)

This section provides the procedures to upgrade the DA-MPs in a multi-active DA-MP cluster. In a multi-active DA-MP cluster, all of the DA-MPs are Active; there are no Standby DA-MPs. The effect on the Diameter network traffic must be considered, since any DA-MP being upgraded will not be handling live traffic.

The DA-MP Server Group can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for DA-MP upgrade is the automated server group upgrade (Procedure 42). The manual upgrade (Procedure 43) is provided as an alternative upgrade method.

To use the automated DA-MP upgrade, execute Procedure 42.

To upgrade the DA-MPs manually, execute Procedure 43.

5.5.3.1 Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)

Procedure 42 is the recommended method for upgrading the DA-MPs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 10.

Procedure 42: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, ASG)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the DA-MP servers for Site 1 using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify the DSR (multi-active cluster) to Upgrade in Site 1 | From the data captured in Table 3, identify the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” Server Group to be upgraded in Site 1. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade DA-MP Server Group identified in Step 1 | Upgrade the DA-MP Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Bulk upgrade mode • Select an Availability setting of no less than 50% <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E , return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 10. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.3.2 Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

Procedure 43 is used to upgrade the DA-MP Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 42. If the DA-MP Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 42, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 10.

Procedure 43 must be executed for all configured DA-MPs of a site, regardless of how the DA-MPs are grouped for upgrade. So if 16 DA-MPs are upgraded four at a time, then Procedure 43 must be executed four distinct times.

Procedure 43: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA – Site 1, manual)

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the DA-MP servers for Site 1 using the manual upgrade method. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify all the DA-MPs to be upgraded together | From the data captured in Table 3, 1. Identify the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” Server Group in Site 1 to be upgraded. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade DA-MP servers as identified in step 1 | Upgrade up to (½) one half (no more than 50%) of the PCA DA-MP servers in parallel using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure : NOTE: If using the manual server upgrade method, it is recommended that the DA-MP Leader be upgraded in the last group of servers to minimize DA-MP Leader role changes. Execute Appendix E: Upgrade Multiple Servers After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E , return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat step 2 for all servers identified in Step 1 of this procedure. | Repeat step 2 of this procedure for the remaining PCA DA-MP servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.4 Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 1)

The following procedure is used to upgrade the SS7-MPs in the SS7-IWF server groups. The effect on the Diameter network traffic must be considered, since any SS7-MP being upgraded will not be handling live traffic.

Procedure 44 must be executed for all configured SS7-MPs of a site. To upgrade multiple SS7-MPs in parallel, Procedure 44 must be executed for each selected server group.

Procedure 44: Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 1)


| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the SS7-MPs. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify all the SS7-MPs to be upgraded together, if equipped | If SS7-MPs are deployed, choose the MP(s) on which upgrade can be executed in parallel, considering traffic. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade selected SS7-MPs | Upgrade the selected SS7-MPs, executing the Upgrade Single Server procedure, once for each SS7-MP. <p style="text-align: center;">Execute Appendix D: Upgrade Single Server</p> After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D for all selected SS7-MPs, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all SS7-MP servers | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the next set of SS7-MP servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.5 Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA – Site 1)

If none of the signaling network elements in the site being upgraded has IPFE servers installed, skip this section and proceed to next procedure. Otherwise, the following procedure must be executed independently for each signaling network element that has IPFE servers installed.

Procedure 45: Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA – Site 1)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the IPFE servers for Site 1 | |
| | Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. | |
| | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| | 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify IPFE upgrade order |
| | | Select an IPFE to be upgraded, considering traffic impact. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade IPFE server | Upgrade the IPFE identified in step 1, using the Upgrade Single Server procedure. Execute Appendix D - Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all IPFE servers | Repeat step 2 for each IPFE server. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |



THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE EXECUTED AT THE COMPLETION OF EACH SOAM SITE UPGRADE:

- Procedure 55: Allow Site Provisioning
- Procedure 57: Verify Post-Upgrade Status




AFTER ALL SOAM SITES IN THE TOPOLOGY HAVE COMPLETED UPGRADE, THE UPGRADE MAY BE ACCEPTED USING THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE:

- Procedure 67: Accept Upgrade

PCA SITE 2 UPGRADE

Use this section to upgrade Site 2 of a PCA System



!! WARNING!!

THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE COMPLETED BEFORE THE START OF SOAM UPGRADE:

Procedure 19; [Procedure 21 or Procedure 22]; Procedure 23

5.5.6 PCA SOAM Upgrade - Site 2

For PCA SOAM Site 2, the SOAM(s), the SBRs, the IPFEs, and the associated MPs should be upgraded within a single maintenance window. **If this is not possible, then it is required that all servers within each Server Group share the same release at the end of the maintenance window (i.e. do not split server release levels within the same SG).**

Table 11 provides the upgrade overview for PCA Site 2.

Table 11: Site Upgrade Execution Overview (PCA, Site 2).

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hrs: min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|--|---|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 19 | 0:10-0:20 | 0:10-0:20 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Backups | None |
| Procedure 21 or Procedure 22 | 0:05-0:10 0:10-0:15 | 0:15-0:30 0:20-0:35 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.2 | None |
| Procedure 23 | 0:01 | 0:16-0:36 | SOAM Pre-Upgrade Health Check for Release 7.0.1, 7.1.x | None |
| Procedure 23 | 0:01 | 0:16-0:36 | Disable Site Provisioning | Site Provisioning Disabled, No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 46 | 0:01-0:05 | 0:17-0:41 | Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA Site 2) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 47 or Procedure 48 | 0:40-1:20 | 0:57-2:01 | Upgrade SOAMS (PCA Site 2, ASG) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 48 | | | Upgrade SOAMs (PCA Site 2, manual) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 49 or Procedure 50 | 0:40-2:40 | 1:37-4:41 | Upgrade SBRs (PCA Site 2, ASG) | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 50 | | | Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 2, manual) | No Traffic Impact |

| | | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------|------------|---|--|
| Procedure 51 or Procedure 52 | 0:40-2:40 | 2:17-7:21 | Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, ASG) Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, manual) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded. |
| Procedure 53 | 0:20-2:40 | 2:37-10:01 | Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 2) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded |
| Procedure 54 | 0:20-1:20 | 2:57-11:21 | Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA Site 2) | Traffic will not be handled by the MP(s) being upgraded. |
| Procedure 55 | 0:01 | 2:58-11:22 | Allow Site Provisioning | No Traffic Impact |
| Procedure 57 | 0:10-0:15 | 3:08-11:37 | Verify Post-Upgrade Status | No Traffic Impact |

5.5.6.1 SOAM Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA Site 2)

This procedure verifies the traffic status to ensure traffic is running as expected prior to upgrading the site. Site provisioning is verified to be disabled as well.

Procedure 46: Upgrade Pre-Checks (PCA Site 2)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure verifies traffic status, and verifies that Site Provisioning is disabled, in preparation for upgrading the SOAMs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | SOAM VIP: Verify Traffic status | <p>Verify traffic status by observing the KPIs.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Inspect KPI reports to verify traffic is at the expected condition. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | SOAM VIP: Verify Site Provisioning is disabled | <p>Verify that Site Provisioning was properly disabled in Procedure 23.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. In the GUI status bar, where it says “<i>Connected using ...</i>”, check for the message “Site Provisioning disabled” <p>If the message is present, proceed to the next procedure per Table 13; otherwise, execute Procedure 23: Disable Site Provisioning</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.6.2 Upgrade SOAMs (PCA Site 2, ASG)

The SOAMs can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for SOAM upgrade is the automated server group upgrade.

Procedure 47 is the recommended method for upgrading the SOAMs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 11.

Procedure 47: Upgrade SOAMS (PCA Site 2, ASG)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SOAM(s) using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Upgrade SOAM Server Group</p> | <p>NOTE: the Spare servers of this server group will be located at different sites.</p> <p>Upgrade the SOAM Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Bulk upgrade mode <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 11.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NOTE: Once the Network Element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a Server Group and re-added, the server must be restored by way of Disaster Recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server will be inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.5.6.3 Upgrade SOAMs (PCA Site 2, manual)

Procedure 48 is used to upgrade the SOAM Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 47. If the SOAM Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 47, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 11.

Procedure 48: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA Site 2, manual)

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SOAMs using the manual upgrade method.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Upgrade Standby SOAM and Spare SOAM in parallel</p> | <p>NOTE: the Spare servers of this triplet will be located at different sites.</p> <p>Upgrade the standby SOAM and Spare SOAM servers in parallel using the Upgrade Multiple Server procedure. Use the manual upgrade option. Do not use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option.</p> <p>Execute Appendix E - Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |

Procedure 48: Upgrade SOAMs (PCA Site 2, manual)

| | | |
|---|---------------------|--|
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade Active SOAM | <p>Upgrade the Active SOAM server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 11.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NOTE: Once the Network Element SOAMs are upgraded, if any C-level server is removed from a Server Group and re-added, the server must be restored by way of Disaster Recovery procedures. The normal replication channel to the C-level server will be inhibited due to the difference in release versions.

5.5.7 Upgrade SBR (PCA Site 2)

This section provides the procedures to upgrade the SBR Server Group for Site 2. The SBRs can be upgraded manually, under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for SBR upgrade is the automated upgrade (Procedure 49). The manual upgrade (Procedure 50) option is provided as an alternate upgrade method.

To use the automated SBR upgrade, execute Procedure 49.
 To upgrade the SBRs manually, execute Procedure 50.

5.5.7.1 Upgrade SBRs (PCA Site 2, ASG)

Procedure 49 is the recommended method for upgrading the SBRs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 11.

Procedure 49: Upgrade SBRs (PCA Site 2, ASG)

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SBR Server Group for Site 2 using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify the SBR Server Group(s) to Upgrade | <p>1. From the data captured in Table 3, identify the SBR server group(s) to upgrade. One server group can be executed at a time or multiple server groups can be executed simultaneously.</p> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade SBR Server Group(s) identified in step 1 of this procedure. | <p>NOTE: The Spare SBRs of this server group will be located at different sites.</p> <p>1. Upgrade the SBR Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Grouped Bulk upgrade mode • Select an Availability setting of no less than 50% <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all SBR Server Groups with Active, Standby in Site 1 and Spare in Site 2 (and an optional 2 nd Spare in Site 3) | <p>Repeat step 2 for all remaining binding and session server groups to be upgraded.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.7.2 Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 2, manual)


Procedure 50 is used to upgrade the SBR Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 49. If the SBR Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 49, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 11.

Note: Before upgrading the Active SBR, it is imperative that the database audit of the Spare and Standby servers complete successfully. Failure to comply could result in a loss of session data.

Procedure 50: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 2, manual)

| | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SBR triplet for Site 2 using the manual upgrade option.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> |
| 1. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Identify the SBR Server Group to Upgrade</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the data captured in Table 3, pick the server group(s) to upgrade. One server group can be upgraded at one time or multiple server groups can be upgraded simultaneously. Identify all server groups selected for upgrade in sub-step 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Navigate to Main Menu > Policy and Charging >Maintenance >SBR Status. Open each server group chosen in sub-step 1. Note which server is Active, Standby and Spare (as designated by the Resource HA Role) for each server group chosen for upgrade. The following figure provides an example: <p style="text-align: center;"> GTR-SBR-1A - Active GTR-SBR-1B - Standby GTR-SBR-1Sp - Spare </p> <p>Main Menu: Policy and Charging -> Maintenance -> SBR Status</p> <p>NOTE: SBR servers have two High Availability policies: one for controlling replication of session or binding data, and one for receipt of replicated configuration data from the NOAM and SOAM GUIs. During this upgrade procedure, ONLY the High Availability policy for replication of session or binding data is important. This means that the SBR Status screen MUST be used to determine the High Availability status (Active, Standby, or Spare) of SBR servers. The HA Status screen and the OAM Max HA Role column on the Upgrade screen must NOT be used because they only show the status of the configuration replication policy.</p> <p>Because the two High Availability policies run independently, it is possible that a given server might be Standby or Spare for the session and binding replication policy, but Active for the configuration replication policy. When this happens, it is necessary to ignore warnings on the Upgrade screen about selecting what it views as the Active server (for the configuration replication policy).</p> |

Procedure 50: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 2, manual)

| <p>2.</p> | <p>Upgrade Spare SBR Server identified in step 1 of this procedure.</p> | <p>NOTE: Spare SBR of this triplet will be located at a different site.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade the Spare SBR server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure : <p>Execute Appendix D—Upgrade Single Server Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point to monitor server status.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Main Menu > Policy and Charging > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded. Monitor the Resource HA Role status of the Spare server. If the system is equipped with a second Spare SBR server, repeat sub-steps 1 thru 3 for the other spare. <p>Caution: Do not proceed to step 3 until the Resource HA Role of the Spare SBR server is Spare.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------|-------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|------------|--------|--------|-----------------|------------|---------|--------|-----------------|-------------|-------|--------|-----------------|
| <p>3.</p> | <p>Upgrade Standby SBR Server identified in step 1 of this procedure.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Upgrade the Standby SBR server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure : <p>Execute Appendix D—Upgrade Single Server Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | | <p>!WARNING! Failure to comply with step 4 and step 5 may result in the loss of PCA traffic, resulting in service impact</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>4.</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Verify Standby SBR server status</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Main Menu > Policy and Charging > Maintenance > SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded. Do not proceed to step 5 until the Resource HA Role for the Standby server has a status of Standby. <p>Main Menu: Policy and Charging -> Maintenance -> SBR Status</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Filter ▼</p> <hr/> <p>PCA_MATED_SITES</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group Name</th> <th>Resource Domain Name</th> <th>Resource Domain Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input type="checkbox"/> GTR_SBR_SG_A</td> <td>PCA_SESSION</td> <td>Policy and Charging Session</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Name</th> <th>Resource HA Role</th> <th>Congestion Level</th> <th>Sub Resources Hosted</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>GTR-SBR-1A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-SBR-1B</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NSX-SBR-1Sp</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | Server Group Name | Resource Domain Name | Resource Domain Profile | <input type="checkbox"/> GTR_SBR_SG_A | PCA_SESSION | Policy and Charging Session | Server Name | Resource HA Role | Congestion Level | Sub Resources Hosted | GTR-SBR-1A | Active | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | GTR-SBR-1B | Standby | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | NSX-SBR-1Sp | Spare | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 |
| Server Group Name | Resource Domain Name | Resource Domain Profile | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input type="checkbox"/> GTR_SBR_SG_A | PCA_SESSION | Policy and Charging Session | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server Name | Resource HA Role | Congestion Level | Sub Resources Hosted | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GTR-SBR-1A | Active | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GTR-SBR-1B | Standby | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NSX-SBR-1Sp | Spare | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 50: Upgrade SBRs (PCA – Site 2, manual)

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>5.</p> | <p>Verify that bulk download is complete between Active SBR in server group to Standby SBR and Spare SBR.</p> | <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Main Menu > Alarm & Event > View History Export the Event Log using the following filter: Server Group: Choose the SBR group that is in upgrade Display Filter: Event ID = 31127 – DB Replication Audit Complete Collection Interval: X hours ending in current time, where X is the time from upgrade completion of the Standby and Spare servers to the current time. Wait for all instances of Event 31127: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1 for the Standby Binding SBR 1 for the Standby Session SBR 1 for the Spare Binding SBR server 1 for the Spare Session SBR server 1 for the 3rd site Spare Binding SBR (if equipped) 1 for the 3rd site Spare Session SBR (if equipped) <p>NOTE: There is an expected loss of traffic depending on size of the bulk download. This must be noted along with events captured.</p> |
| <p>6.</p> | <p>Upgrade Active SBR Server as identified in Step 1 in this procedure</p> | <p>Upgrade the Active SBR server using the Upgrade Single Server procedure :</p> <p>Execute Appendix D -- Single Server Upgrade Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |
| <p>7.</p> | <p>Repeat for all the Binding and Session Server Groups with Active, Standby in Site 2) and Spare in Site 1</p> | <p>Repeat steps 1 through 6 for the remaining binding and session server groups to be upgraded.</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |



!! WARNING!! THE IPFEs AND THE DA-MPs MUST BE UPGRADED IN THE SAME MAINTENANCE WINDOW

5.5.8 Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2)

This section provides the procedures to upgrade the DA-MPs in a multi-active DA-MP cluster. In a multi-active DA-MP cluster, all of the DA-MPs are Active; there are no Standby DA-MPs. The effect on the Diameter network traffic must be considered, since any DA-MP being upgraded will not be handling live traffic.

The DA-MP Server Group can be upgraded manually under user control, or automatically using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. The recommended method for DA-MP upgrade is the automated server group upgrade (Procedure 51). The manual upgrade (Procedure 52) is provided as an alternative upgrade method.

To use the automated DA-MP upgrade, execute Procedure 51.

To upgrade the DA-MPs manually, execute Procedure 52.

5.5.8.1 Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, ASG)

Procedure 51 is the recommended method for upgrading the DA-MPs. Upon completion of this procedure, proceed to the next procedure as specified in Table 11.

Procedure 51: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, ASG)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure upgrades the DA-MP servers for Site 1 using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify the DSR (multi-active cluster) to Upgrade in Site 2 | From the data captured in Table 3, identify the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” Server Group to be upgraded in Site 2. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Active NOAM VIP: Upgrade DA-MP Server Group identified in Step 1 | Upgrade the DA-MP Server Group using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure with the following options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use the Automated Server Group Upgrade option • Select the Bulk upgrade option • Select an Availability setting of no less than 50% <p>Execute Appendix E — Upgrade Multiple Servers Procedure</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next procedure per Table 11.</p> |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.8.2 Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, manual)

Procedure 52 is used to upgrade the DA-MP Server Group manually. This procedure is provided as an alternative to the Automated Server Group Upgrade in Procedure 51. If the DA-MP Server Group was upgraded using Procedure 51, do not execute this procedure; continue with the next procedure per Table 11.

Procedure 52 must be executed for all configured DA-MPs of a site, regardless of how the DA-MPs are grouped for upgrade. So if 16 DA-MPs are upgraded four at a time, then Procedure 52 must be executed four distinct times.

Procedure 52: Upgrade DA-MPs (PCA Site 2, manual)

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | PCA server (DA-MP Server) upgrade procedure for Site 2 using the manual upgrade method. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify the DSR (multi-active cluster) to Upgrade in Site 2 | From the data captured in Table 3, 1. Identify the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” Server Group in Site 2. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade PCA Server as identified in Step 1 | 1. Upgrade (½) one half (no more than 50%) of the PCA (DA-MP) servers in parallel using the Upgrade Multiple Servers procedure : NOTE: If using the manual server upgrade method, it is recommended that the DA-MP Leader be upgraded in the last group of servers to minimize DA-MP Leader role changes. The DA-MP Leader is automatically upgraded last when using the Bulk or Serial upgrade methods. Execute Appendix E : Upgrade Multiple Servers After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix E, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all servers identified in Step 1 of this procedure. | Repeat step 2 of this procedure for the remaining PCA (DA-MP) servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.9 Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 2)

The following procedure is used to upgrade the SS7-MPs in the SS7-IWF server groups. The effect on the Diameter network traffic must be considered, since any SS7-MP being upgraded will not be handling live traffic.

Procedure 53 must be executed for all configured SS7-MPs of a site. To upgrade multiple SS7-MPs in parallel, Procedure 53 must be executed for each selected server group.

Procedure 53: Upgrade SS7-MPs (PCA Site 2)

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades the SS7-MPs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify all the SS7-MPs to be upgraded together, if equipped | If SS7-MPs are deployed, choose the number of MP(s) on which upgrade can be executed in parallel, considering traffic. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade selected SS7-MPs | <p>Upgrade the selected SS7-MPs, executing the Upgrade Single Server procedure, once for each SS7-MP, in parallel.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Execute Appendix D: Upgrade Single Server</p> <p>After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D for all selected SS7-MPs, return to this point and continue with the next step.</p> |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all SS7-MP servers | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the next set of SS7-MP servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

5.5.10 Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA Site 2)

If none of the signaling network elements in the site being upgraded has IPFE servers installed, skip this section and proceed to next procedure. Otherwise, the following procedure must be executed independently for each signaling network element that has IPFE servers installed.

Procedure 54: Upgrade IPFE(s) (PCA Site 2)

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| S T E P # | IPFE server upgrade procedure for Site 2 | |
| | Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. | |
| | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| | 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Identify IPFE upgrade order |
| | | Select an IPFE to be upgraded, considering traffic impact. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Upgrade IPFE server | Upgrade the IPFE identified in step 1, using the Upgrade Single Server procedure. Execute Appendix D - Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration After successfully completing the procedure in Appendix D, return to this point and continue with the next step. |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all IPFE servers | Repeat step 2 for the remaining IPFE servers. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |



THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURES MUST BE EXECUTED AT THE COMPLETION OF EACH SOAM SITE UPGRADE:

- Procedure 55: Allow Site Provisioning
- Procedure 57: Verify Post-Upgrade Status



AFTER ALL SOAM SITES IN THE TOPOLOGY HAVE COMPLETED UPGRADE, THE UPGRADE MAY BE ACCEPTED USING THE FOLLOWING PROCEDURE:

- Procedure 67: Accept Upgrade

6 SOAM POST-UPGRADE VERIFICATION

The post-upgrade procedures consist of procedures that are performed after all of the site upgrades are complete. The final Health Check of the system collects alarm and status information to verify that the upgrade did not degrade system operation. After an appropriate soak time, the upgrade is accepted.

6.1.1 Allow Site Provisioning

This procedure enables Site Provisioning for the site just upgraded.

| | |
|----------------|--|
| CAUTION | ANY PROVISIONING CHANGES MADE TO THIS SITE BEFORE THE UPGRADE IS ACCEPTED WILL BE LOST IF THE UPGRADE IS BACKED OUT |
|----------------|--|

Procedure 55: Allow Site Provisioning

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure allows provisioning for SOAM and MP servers. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active SOAM VIP:</u> Enable Site Provisioning | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI of the site just upgraded using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed. 3. Click the Enable Site Provisioning button. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Site Provisioning |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

6.1.2 SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Checks

This section provides procedures to verify the validity and health of the site upgrade.

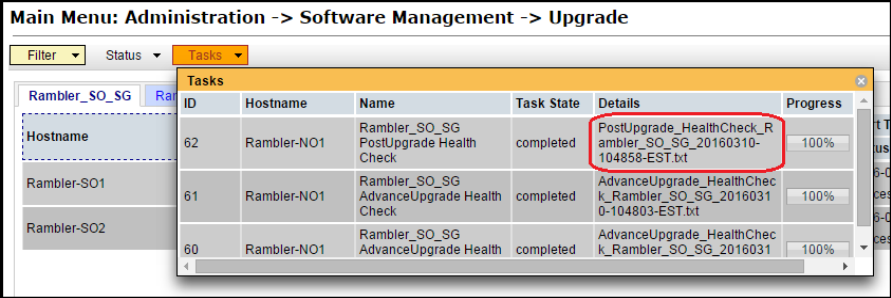
6.1.2.1 SOAM Post-UpgradeHealth Check

This procedure determines the validity of the upgrade, as well as the health and status of the network and servers.

Procedure 56: SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check

| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure verifies Post-Upgrade site status.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|--------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|----------|---------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|--|--|-------------|--------------------------|--------|--------------------------|-----|-------------------|-------------|--------------------------|---------|--------------------------|-----|-------------------|----------|--------|--------|-------------|--------------|---|
| <p>1</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>This procedure will run the automated post-upgrade Health Checks.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade screen is displayed. Select the SOAM Server Group tab for the site being upgraded. Select the Active SOAM. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter Tasks</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl Max HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> <th colspan="2"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Rambler-SO1</td> <td>Accept or Reject Warn</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM SO_Rambler</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.2.0.0.0-72.17.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Rambler-SO2</td> <td>Accept or Reject Warn</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>System OAM SO_Rambler</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.2.0.0.0-72.17.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Checkup button. The Upgrade [Checkup] screen is displayed. Under Health check options, select the Post Upgrade option. Click Ok. Control returns to the Upgrade screen. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Rambler-SO1</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO_Rambler</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p>Checkup Type: <input type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input checked="" type="radio"/> Post Upgrade</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: - Select - Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> </div> | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | Rambler-SO1 | Accept or Reject Warn | Active | System OAM SO_Rambler | OAM | 7.2.0.0.0-72.17.0 | Rambler-SO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby | System OAM SO_Rambler | OAM | 7.2.0.0.0-72.17.0 | Hostname | Action | Status | Rambler-SO1 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO_Rambler |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rambler-SO1 | Accept or Reject Warn | Active | System OAM SO_Rambler | OAM | 7.2.0.0.0-72.17.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rambler-SO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby | System OAM SO_Rambler | OAM | 7.2.0.0.0-72.17.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Action | Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rambler-SO1 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO_Rambler | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 56: SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check

| <p>2</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor health check progress</p> | <p>Monitor for the completion of the Health Check.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Tasks dropdown to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO Server Group> PostUpgrade Health Check. 2. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column will display a hyperlink to the Health Check report. 3. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results.  <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>62</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>61</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>60</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_2016031</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | 62 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt | 100% | 61 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% | 60 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_2016031 | 100% |
|---|--|---|------------|--|------------|---------|----------|----|-------------|--|-----------|---|------|----|-------------|---|-----------|--|------|----|-------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|--|------|
| ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 62 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 61 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 60 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_2016031 | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>3</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Analyze health check results</p> | <p>Analyze Health Check failure. If the Health Check report status is anything other than "Pass", the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the upgrade can proceed.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. 2. Select the file named "UpgradeHealthCheck.log" and click View. 3. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. 4. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the upgrade. If necessary, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance as described in Appendix J. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>4</p> <p>Active SOAM VIP:</p> <p>Export and archive the Diameter configuration data</p> | <p>Export Diameter configuration data</p> <p>From the Active SOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Main Menu > Diameter Common > Export 2. Capture and archive the Diameter data by choosing the drop down entry named "ALL". 3. Verify the requested data is exported using the tasks button at the top of the screen. 4. Browse to Main Menu > Status & Manage > Files and download all the exported files to the client machine, or use the SCP utility to download the files from the Active SOAM to the client machine. 5. Select Diameter > Maintenance > Applications 6. Verify Operational Status is 'Available' for all applications | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>5</p> <p>Active SOAM Server:</p> <p>Check if the setup previously has a customer supplied Apache certificate installed and protected with a passphrase, which was renamed before starting with upgrade.</p> | <p>If the setup had a customer-supplied Apache certificate installed and protected with passphrase before the start of the upgrade (refer to Procedure 2), then rename the certificate back to the original name.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 56: SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| 6 <input type="checkbox"/> | Compare data to the Pre-Upgrade health check to verify if the system has degraded after the second maintenance window. | Verify that the health check status of the upgraded site as collected from Steps 1 through 4 is the same as the pre-upgrade health checks taken in Procedure 21. If system operation is degraded, it is recommended to contact MOS. |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

6.1.2.2 Alternate SOAM Post-Upgrade Health Check

This procedure determines the validity of the upgrade, as well as the health and status of the network and servers. This procedure is an alternative to the normal post upgrade health check in Procedure 56.

Procedure 57: Verify Post-Upgrade Status

| | |
|---|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure verifies Post-Upgrade site status.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>ACTIVE SOAM CLI:</p> <p>Verify SOAM post-Upgrade Status</p> <p>Run SOAM post-upgrade health check.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the Active SOAM: <pre>ssh <SOAM XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 3.</p> Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck postUpgradeHealthCheckOnSoam</pre> <p>This command creates files in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/ UpgradeHealthCheck/ with the filename format:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_ServerStatusReport_<date-time>.xml <SOserver_name>_ComAgentConnStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If any alarms are present in the system:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_AlarmStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>If the system is PDRA, one additional file is generated:</p> <pre><SOserver_name>_SBRStatusReport_<date-time>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The same command used for pre-upgrade healthchecks “preUpgradeHealthCheckOnSoam” is also used to verify Post upgrade health status.</p> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> If the message “Server <hostname> needs operator attention before upgrade” is output, inspect the Server Status Report to determine the reason for the message. If the following message appears in the Server Status Report, the alert can be ignored: Server <hostname> has no alarm with DB State as Normal and Process state as Kill. <p>Note: If any server status is not as expected, do not proceed with the upgrade. It is recommended to contact MOS for guidance.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Keep these reports for future reference. These reports will be compared to alarm and status reports after the upgrade is complete. |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>ACTIVE SOAM CLI:</p> <p>Capture Diameter Maintenance Status</p> <p>Capture Diameter Maintenance status.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Enter the command: <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck diameterMaintStatus</pre> <p>This command will output a series of messages, providing Diameter Maintenance status. Capture this output and save for later use. Note: the output is also captured in /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/UpgradeHealthCheck.log.</p> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> |

Procedure 57: Verify Post-Upgrade Status

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>ACTIVE SOAM CLI:</p> <p>View DA-MP Status</p> | <p>Capture DA-MP status.</p> <p>1. Enter the command:</p> <pre>\$ upgradeHealthCheck daMpStatus</pre> <p>This command outputs status to the screen for review.</p> <p>Note: The message “FIPS integrity verification test failed” may be output when the upgradeHealthCheck command runs. This message can be ignored.</p> <p>2. Verify all Peer MPs are available</p> <p>3. Note the number of Total Connections Established _____</p> |
| <p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Compare data to the Pre-Upgrade health check to verify if the system has degraded after the second maintenance window.</p> | <p>Verify that the health check status of the upgraded site as collected in this procedure is the same as the pre-upgrade health checks taken in Procedure 21. If system operation is degraded, it is recommended to report it to MOS.</p> |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | |

NOTE: *If another site is to be upgraded, all procedures specified by Table 7 must be executed. However, the user should be aware that mated sites should not be upgraded in the same maintenance window.*

7 BACKOUT PROCEDURE OVERVIEW

The procedures provided in this section return the individual servers and the overall DSR system to the source release after an upgrade is aborted. The backout procedures support two options for restoring the source release:

- Emergency backout
- Normal backout

The emergency backout overview is provided in Table 12. These procedures back out the target release software in the fastest possible manner, without regard to traffic impact.

The normal backout overview is provided in Table 13. These procedures back out the target release software in a more controlled manner, sustaining traffic to the extent possible.

All backout procedures are executed inside a maintenance window.

The backout procedure times provided in Table 12 and Table 13 are only estimates as the reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done.

Table 12: Emergency Backout Procedure Overview.

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------|---|--|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 58 | 0:10-0:30 | 0:10-0:30 | Backout Setup: The reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done. Since all possible reasons cannot be predicted ahead of time, only estimates are given here. Execution time will vary. | None. |
| Procedure 59 | See Note | See Note | Emergency Site Backout: NOTE: Execution time of downgrading entire network is approximately equivalent to execution time taken during upgrade. 0:05 (5 minutes) can be subtracted from total time because ISO Administration is not executed during Backout procedures. | All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also backout procedures will cause traffic loss. |
| Procedure 64 | See Note | See Note | Backout Multiple Servers: NOTE: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server. | All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also backout procedures will cause traffic loss. |
| Procedure 60 | See Note | See Note | Emergency NOAM Backout: NOTE: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server. | All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also backout procedures will cause traffic loss. |
| Procedure 66 | 0:01-0:05 | Varies | Post-Backout Health Check | None |

Table 13: Normal Backout Procedure Overview.

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------|--|--|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 58 | 0:10-0:30 | 0:10-0:30 | Backout Setup: The reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done. Since all possible reasons cannot be predicted ahead of time, only estimates are given here. Execution time will vary. | None. |
| Procedure 61 | See Note | See Note | Normal Site Backout: NOTE: Execution time of downgrading entire network is approximately equivalent to execution time taken during upgrade. 0:05 (5 minutes) can be subtracted from total time because ISO Administration is not executed during Backout procedures. | All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also backout procedures will cause traffic loss. |
| Procedure 64 | See Note | See Note | Backout Multiple Servers: NOTE: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server. | All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also backout procedures will cause traffic loss. |
| Procedure 62 | See Note | See Note | Normal NOAM Backout: NOTE: Execution time of downgrading a single server is approximately equivalent to execution time to upgrade the server. | All impacts as applicable in upgrade apply in this procedure. Also backout procedures will cause traffic loss. |
| Procedure 66 | 0:01-0:05 | Varies | Post-Backout Health Check | None |

7.1 Recovery Procedures

It is recommended to direct upgrade procedure recovery issues to MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document. Before executing any of these procedures, it is recommended to contact MOS. Execute this section only if there is a problem and it is desired to revert back to the pre-upgrade version of the software.

Warning
Before attempting to perform these backout procedures, it is recommended to first contact MOS as described in Appendix J.

Warning
Backout procedures WILL cause traffic loss.
NOTE: These recovery procedures are provided for the backout of an Upgrade ONLY (i.e., from a failed 71.y.z release to the previously installed 7.0.w release). Backout of an initial installation is not supported.

7.2 Backout Health Check

This section provides the procedure to verify that the DSR is ready for backout. The site post-upgrade Health Check is used to perform the backout Health Check.

Procedure 58: Backout Setup

| S T E P # | <p>This procedure is used to prepare a DSR system for backout.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------------------------|----------|---------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|--|--|-------------|--------------------------|--------|------------|-----|-----------------|-------------|--------------------------|---------|------------|-----|-----------------|--|--|-----|------------|--|--------------------------------|--|--|-----|------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>This procedure will run the automated post-upgrade Health Checks for backout.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade screen is displayed. 2. Select the SOAM Server Group tab for the site being backed out. 3. Select the Active SOAM. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <p>Rambler_NO_SG Rambler_DAMP_SG Rambler_DRNO_SG Rambler_SO_SG</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl Max HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> <th colspan="2"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Rambler-SO1</td> <td style="background-color: #ffff00;">Accept or Reject Warn</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.17.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Rambler-SO2</td> <td style="background-color: #ffff00;">Accept or Reject Warn</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td>7.2.0.0-72.17.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO_Rambler</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-7.2.0.0-72.17.0->86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO_Rambler</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-7.2.0.0-72.17.0->86_64.iso</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Checkup Checkup All Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | Rambler-SO1 | Accept or Reject Warn | Active | System OAM | OAM | 7.2.0.0-72.17.0 | Rambler-SO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby | System OAM | OAM | 7.2.0.0-72.17.0 | | | N/A | SO_Rambler | | DSR-7.2.0.0-72.17.0->86_64.iso | | | N/A | SO_Rambler | | DSR-7.2.0.0-72.17.0->86_64.iso |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rambler-SO1 | Accept or Reject Warn | Active | System OAM | OAM | 7.2.0.0-72.17.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rambler-SO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby | System OAM | OAM | 7.2.0.0-72.17.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | N/A | SO_Rambler | | DSR-7.2.0.0-72.17.0->86_64.iso | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | N/A | SO_Rambler | | DSR-7.2.0.0-72.17.0->86_64.iso | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 58: Backout Setup

| | | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Checkup button. The Upgrade [Checkup] screen is displayed. Under Health check options, select the Post Upgrade option. Click Ok. Control returns to the Upgrade screen. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Checkup]</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Rambler-SO1</td> <td>Health Check</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO_Rambler</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Health check options</p> <p>Checkup Type: <input type="radio"/> Advance Upgrade <input type="radio"/> Pre Upgrade <input checked="" type="radio"/> Post Upgrade</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: - Select -</p> <p>Upgrade health check type. Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p style="text-align: right;">Ok Cancel</p> </div> | Hostname | Action | Status | Rambler-SO1 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO_Rambler | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|------------|--|----------|---------------|--------------|---|----|-------------|--|------------|---|----------|----|-------------|---|-----------|--|------|----|-------------|---|-----------|--|------|----|-------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|--|------|
| Hostname | Action | Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rambler-SO1 | Health Check | OAM Max HA Role: Active Network Element: SO_Rambler | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>2.</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor health check progress</p> | <p>Monitor for the completion of the Health Check.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Tasks dropdown to display the currently executing tasks. The Health Check task name appears as <SO ServerGroup> PostUpgrade Health Check. Monitor the Health Check task until the Task State is completed. The Details column will display a hyperlink to the Health Check report. Click the hyperlink to download the Health Check report. Open the report and review the results. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Filter</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Tasks</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Rambler_SO_SG</td> <td>Ra</td> <td> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>62</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>61</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>60</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | Filter | Status | Tasks | Rambler_SO_SG | Ra | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>62</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>61</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>60</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | 62 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt | 100% | 61 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% | 60 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% |
| Filter | Status | Tasks | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Rambler_SO_SG | Ra | <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Task State</th> <th>Details</th> <th>Progress</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>62</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>61</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>60</td> <td>Rambler-NO1</td> <td>Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health</td> <td>completed</td> <td>AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt</td> <td>100%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> | ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | 62 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt | 100% | 61 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% | 60 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | |
| ID | Hostname | Name | Task State | Details | Progress | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 62 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | PostUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104858-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 61 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health Check | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 60 | Rambler-NO1 | Rambler_SO_SG AdvanceUpgrade Health | completed | AdvanceUpgrade_HealthCheck_Rambler_SO_SG_20160310-104803-EST.txt | 100% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>3.</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Analyze health check results</p> | <p>Analyze Health Check results. If the Health Check report status is anything other than "Pass", the Health Check logs can be analyzed to determine if the backout can proceed.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. Select the file named "UpgradeHealthCheck.log" and click View. Locate the log entries for the most recent health check. Review the log for failures. Analyze the failures and determine if it is safe to continue the backout. If necessary, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance as described in Appendix J. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 58: Backout Setup

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>4.</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Identify IP addresses of servers to be backed out</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. 2. Based on the "Application Version" column, identify all the hostnames that need to be backed out. 3. Select Configuration > Servers. 4. Using the data recorded in Table 3, note the XMI/iLO/LOM IP addresses of all the hostnames to be backed out. These are required to access the server when performing the backout. <p>The reason to execute a backout has a direct impact on any additional backout preparation that must be done. The backout procedures WILL cause traffic loss. Since all possible reasons cannot be predicted ahead of time, it is recommended to contact MOS as stated in the Warning box above.</p> |
| <p>5.</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify backup archive files</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Files. 2. For each server to be backed out, select the server tab on the Files screen. Verify that the two backup archive files, created in section 3.3.5, are present on every server that is to be backed out. These archive files will have the format: <p>Backup.<application>.<server>.FullDBParts.<role>.<date_time>.UPG.tar.bz2 Backup.<application>.<server>.FullRunEnv.<role>.<date_time>.UPG.tar.bz2</p> |

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

EMERGENCY SITE BACKOUT

Use this section to perform an emergency backout of a DSR upgrade

7.3 Perform Emergency Backout

The procedures in this section perform a backout of all servers to restore the source release. An emergency backout can only be executed once all necessary corrective setup steps have been taken to prepare for the backout. It is recommended to contact MOS, as stated in the warning box in Section 7.1, to verify that all corrective setup steps have been taken.

7.3.1 Emergency Site Backout

The procedures in this section backout all servers at a specific site without regard to traffic impact.




!! WARNING!! EXECUTING THIS PROCEDURE WILL RESULT IN A TOTAL LOSS OF ALL TRAFFIC BEING PROCESSED BY THIS DSR. TRAFFIC BEING PROCESSED BY THE MATE DSR IS NOT AFFECTED.

Procedure 59: Emergency Site Backout

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure is used to backout the DSR application software from multiple B- and C-level servers for a specific site. Any server requiring backout can be included: SOAMs, DA-MPs, SS7-MPs, IPFEs, and SBRs. | |
| | Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. | |
| | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active NOAM VIP:</u> Identify all servers that require Backout | Identify all servers that require Backout (within a Site): <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Administration >Software Management >Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 3. Identify the servers in the respective Server Groups with the target release Application Version value. These servers were previously upgraded but now require Backout. 4. Make note of these servers. They have been identified for backout. 5. Before initiating the backout procedure, remove all new servers and/or sites configured after upgrade was started. |

Procedure 59: Emergency Site Backout

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>2.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Disable Global Provisioning (if not already done)</p> | <p>Disable provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network (if not done previously):</p> <p>Since this step is being executed during a backout procedure, it is likely that Provisioning and Configuration updates are disabled already. If they have not been disabled, execute the following steps to disable provisioning:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed. 2. Click the Disable Provisioning button. 3. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 4. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning. A yellow information box should also be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 002] - Global provisioning has been manually disabled. <p>The Active NOAM server will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> |
| <p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active SOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Disable Site Provisioning for the site to be backed out.</p> | <p>Disable Site Provisioning</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database The Database Status screen is displayed 3. Click the Disable Site Provisioning button. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 5. Verify the button text changes to Enable Site Provisioning. A yellow information box will be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 004] - Site provisioning has been manually disabled. <p>The Active SOAM server will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> |
| <p></p> | <p>!WARNING! STEP 4 WILL RESULT IN A TOTAL LOSS OF ALL TRAFFIC BEING PROCESSED BY THIS DSR</p> | |
| <p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout all C-level servers, as applicable</p> | <p>For all configurations:</p> <p>Backout all C-level servers (IPFEs, SBRs, SBRs, DA-MPs, and SS7-MPs) identified in step 1:</p> <p>Execute Section 7.6, Backout Multiple Servers.</p> |
| <p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout the Standby and Spare SOAM servers, as applicable</p> | <p>Backout the Standby and Spare DSR SOAM servers:</p> <p>If Standby and Spare SOAM servers are present: Execute Section 7.6, Backout Multiple Servers.</p> <p>If only a Spare SOAM server is present: Execute Section 7.5, Backout Single Server.</p> |
| <p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout the Active SOAM</p> | <p>Backout the Active DSR SOAM server:</p> <p>Execute Section 7.5, Backout Single Server.</p> |
| <p>7.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Repeat work-around for other SOAM</p> | <p>Repeat step 6 on the other (now Standby) SOAM.</p> |

Procedure 59: Emergency Site Backout

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| 8. | Active SOAM VIP: <input type="checkbox"/> Enable Site Provisioning | Enable Site provisioning <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed 3. Click the Enable Site Provisioning button. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Site Provisioning |
| <i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i> | | |

NOTE: If another site is to be backed out, follow all procedures in Table 12 in another maintenance window.

7.3.2 Emergency NOAM Backout

The procedures in this section backout the NOAM servers.

Procedure 60: Emergency NOAM Backout

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure is used to perform an emergency backout of the DSR application software from the NOAM servers. This procedure backs out the application software as quickly as possible, without regard to operational impact.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| | 1. | <input type="checkbox"/> Backout Standby DR NOAM server (if equipped) |
| 2. | <input type="checkbox"/> Backout Active DR NOAM server (if equipped) | Backout the other DR NOAM server (now the Standby): Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server. |
| 3. | <input type="checkbox"/> Backout Standby DSR NOAM server (as applicable) | Backout the Standby DSR NOAM server: Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server. |
| 4. | <input type="checkbox"/> Backout Active DSR NOAM server | Backout the other DSR NOAM server (now the standby): Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server. |
| 5. | <input type="checkbox"/> <u>Active NOAM VIP:</u> Enable Global Provisioning | Enable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database The Database Status screen is displayed. 3. Click the Enable Provisioning button. 4. Verify the button text changes to Disable Provisioning. |
| 6. | <input type="checkbox"/> <u>Active NOAM VIP:</u> Remove 'Ready' state for any backed out server | Remove 'Ready' state <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Servers. The Server Status screen is displayed. 2. If any backed-out server Application Status is 'Disabled', then select the server row and press the Restart button. 3. Select Administration >Software Management >Upgrade The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 4. If any backed-out server shows an Upgrade State of "Ready" or "Success", then select that server and press the Complete Upgrade button. Otherwise, skip this step. The Upgrade [Make Ready] screen will appear. 5. Click OK. This will now remove the Forced Standby designation for the backed-out server. <p>NOTE: Due to backout being initiated from the command line instead of through the GUI, the following SOAP error may appear in the GUI banner.</p> <pre>SOAP error while clearing upgrade status of hostname=[frame10311b6] ip=[172.16.1.28]</pre> <p>It is safe to ignore this error message.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Verify the Application Version value for servers has been downgraded to the original release version. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

NORMAL SITE BACKOUT

Use this section to perform a normal backout of a DSR upgrade

7.4 Perform Normal Backout

The following procedures to perform a normal backout can only be executed once all necessary corrective setup steps have been taken to prepare for the backout. It is recommended to contact MOS, as stated in the warning box in Section 7.1, to verify that all corrective setup steps have been taken.


7.4.1 Normal Site Backout

The procedures in this section backout all servers at a specific site.

Procedure 61: Normal Site Backout

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure is used to backout an upgrade of the DSR application software from multiple servers in the network. Any server requiring backout can be included: SOAMs, DA-MPs, SS7-MPs, IPFEs and SBRs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| 1. | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Identify all servers that require Backout</p> | <p>Identify all servers that require Backout (within a Site):</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Administration >Software Management >Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 3. Identify the servers in the respective Server Groups with the target release Application Version value. These servers were previously upgraded but now require Backout. 4. Make note of these servers. They have been identified for Backout. 5. Before initiating the backout procedure, remove all new servers and/or sites configured after upgrade was started. |
| 2. | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Disable Global Provisioning (if not already done)</p> | <p>Disable provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network (if not done previously):</p> <p>Since this step is being executed during a backout procedure, it is likely that Provisioning and Configuration updates are disabled already. If they have not been disabled, execute the following steps to disable provisioning:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed. 2. Click the Disable Provisioning button. 3. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 4. Verify the button text changes to Enable Provisioning. A yellow information box should also be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 002] - Global provisioning has been manually disabled. <p>The Active NOAM server will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> |

Procedure 61: Normal Site Backout

| <p>3.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active SOAM VIP:</p> <p>Disable Site Provisioning for the site to be backed out</p> | <p>Disable Site Provisioning</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > Database The Database Status screen is displayed 2. Click the Disable Site Provisioning button. 3. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 4. Verify the button text changes to Enable Site Provisioning. A yellow information box should also be displayed at the top of the view screen which states: [Warning Code 004] - Site provisioning has been manually disabled. <p>The Active SOAM server will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|--|----------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--|-------------|-----------------------------|-------------|------------------|------------------|----------------------|------------|--------|--------|-----------------|------------|---------|--------|-----------------|-------------|-------|--------|-----------------|
| <p>4.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout the first set of C-level servers as applicable</p> | <p>NOTE: In a PCA System, the Spare SBR server is located at the mated site of the site being backed out.</p> <p>Backout the first set of servers. The following servers can be backed out in parallel (as applicable)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standby DA-MP for 1+1 (Active/Standby) configuration, or • ½ of all DA-MPs for N+0 (Multi-Active) configuration • Standby SBR(s) • Spare SBR(s) • ½ of all SS7-MPs • ½ of all IPFEs <p>Execute 7.5 - Backout Single Server for each Standby/Spare C-level server identified above.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|  | | <p>!WARNING! Failure to comply with step 5 and step 6 may result in the loss of PCA traffic, resulting in service impact</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>5.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify Standby SBR server status</p> | <p>If the server being backed out is the Standby SBR, execute this step. Otherwise, continue with step 6.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Main Menu -> Policy and Charging->Maintenance->SBR Status. Open the tab of the server group being upgraded. 2. Do not proceed to step 6 until the Resource HA Role for the Standby server has a status of Standby. <p>Main Menu: Policy and Charging -> Maintenance -> SBR Status</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px;"> <p>Filter <input type="text"/></p> <p>PCA_MATED_SITES</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group Name</th> <th>Resource Domain Name</th> <th>Resource Domain Profile</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GTR_SBR_SG_A</td> <td>PCA_SESSION</td> <td>Policy and Charging Session</td> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Name</th> <th>Resource HA Role</th> <th>Congestion Level</th> <th>Sub Resources Hosted</th> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-SBR-1A</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GTR-SBR-1B</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NSX-SBR-1Sp</td> <td>Spare</td> <td>Normal</td> <td>0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | Server Group Name | Resource Domain Name | Resource Domain Profile | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GTR_SBR_SG_A | PCA_SESSION | Policy and Charging Session | Server Name | Resource HA Role | Congestion Level | Sub Resources Hosted | GTR-SBR-1A | Active | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | GTR-SBR-1B | Standby | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | NSX-SBR-1Sp | Spare | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 |
| Server Group Name | Resource Domain Name | Resource Domain Profile | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> GTR_SBR_SG_A | PCA_SESSION | Policy and Charging Session | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server Name | Resource HA Role | Congestion Level | Sub Resources Hosted | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GTR-SBR-1A | Active | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| GTR-SBR-1B | Standby | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NSX-SBR-1Sp | Spare | Normal | 0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 61: Normal Site Backout

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>6.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Execute this Step for PCA installations only:</p> <p>Verify bulk download is complete</p> | <p>Verify that bulk download is complete between the Active SBR in the server Group to the Standby and Spare SBRs.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Main Menu > Alarm & Event > View History 2. Export the Event Log using the following filter: Server Group: Choose the SBR group that is in upgrade Display Filter: Event ID = 31127 – DB Replication Audit Complete Collection Interval: X hours ending in current time, where X is the time from upgrade completion of the Standby and Spare servers to the current time. 3. Wait for the following instances of Event 31127: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 for the Standby Binding SBR server • 1 for the Standby Session SBR server • 1 for the Spare Binding SBR server • 1 for the Spare Session SBR server • 1 for the 2nd Spare Binding SBR server, if equipped • 1 for the 2nd Spare Session SBR server, if equipped <p>NOTE: There is an expected loss of traffic depending on size of the bulk download. This must be noted along with events captured.</p> |
| <p>7.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout remaining C-level servers, as applicable</p> | <p>Backout the next set of servers. The following servers can be backed out in parallel (as applicable)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Active DA-MP for 1+1 (Active/Standby) configuration, or • ½ of all DA-MPs for N+0 (Multi-Active) configuration • Active SBR(s) • ½ of all SS7-MPs • ½ of all IPFEs <p>Execute 7.5, Backout Single Server for each C-level server identified above.</p> |
| <p>8.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout the Standby SOAM server</p> | <p>Backout the Standby DSR SOAM server:</p> <p>Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server.</p> |
| <p>9.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout Active SOAM Server</p> | <p>Backout the Active DSR SOAM server:</p> <p>Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server.</p> |
| <p>10.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Backout Spare SOAM Server (if applicable)</p> | <p>NOTE: The Spare server is located at the mated site of the site being backed out.</p> <p>Backout the spare SOAM server:</p> <p>Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server.</p> |
| <p>11.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active SOAM VIP:</p> <p>Enable Site Provisioning</p> | <p>Enable Site provisioning</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database. The Database Status screen is displayed 3. Click the Enable Site Provisioning button. 4. Confirm the operation by clicking Ok in the popup dialog box. 5. Verify the button text changes to Disable Site Provisioning |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | |

NOTE: If another site is to be backed out, follow all procedures in Table 13 in another maintenance window.

7.4.2 Normal NOAM Backout


The procedures in this section backout the NOAM servers.

Procedure 62: Normal NOAM Backout

| | | | |
|------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure is used to perform a normal backout of the DSR application software from the NOAM servers. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE | | |
| | 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | Backout Standby DR NOAM server (if equipped). | Backout the Standby DR NOAM server: Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server. |
| | 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | Backout Active DR NOAM server (if equipped). | Backout the Active DR NOAM server Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server. |
| | 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | Backout Standby DSR NOAM server (as applicable). | Backout the Standby DSR NOAM server: Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server. |
| | 4. <input type="checkbox"/> | Backout Active DSR NOAM server. | Backout the Active NOAM server: Execute Section 7.5 Backout Single Server. |
| 5. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active NOAM VIP:</u> Enable Global Provisioning | Enable global provisioning and configuration updates on the entire network 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Database The Database Status screen is displayed. 3. Click the Enable Provisioning button. 4. Verify the button text changes to Disable Provisioning . | |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | | |

7.5 Backout Single Server

This section provides the procedures to backout the application software on a single server.

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>THIS PROCEDURE IS EXECUTED AS A COMPONENT OF THE EMERGENCY BACKOUT PROCEDURE (SECTION 7.3) OR THE NORMAL BACKOUT PROCEDURE (SECTION 7.4). THIS PROCEDURE SHOULD NEVER BE EXECUTED AS A STANDALONE PROCEDURE.</p> |
|---|--|

Procedure 63: Backout Single Server

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure will backout the upgrade of DSR 7.1.x/7.2 application software.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| <p>1</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px auto;"></div> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Prepare the server for backout.</p> | <p>Perform the following steps to prepare the server for backout.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 2. Select the server group tab containing the server to be backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is 'Accept or Reject'. <p>Make the server 'Backout Ready' as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Select Status & Manage > HA. The HA status screen displays. 4. Click the Edit button. 5. Select the server to be backed out and choose a Max Allowed HA Role value of Standby (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). <p>Note: When the Active NOAM is the server being backed out, selecting OK will initiate an HA switchover, causing the GUI session to log out. Before logging into the Active OAM again, close and re-open the browser using the VIP address for the NOAM, and then clear the browser cache. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Click the Ok button. 7. The HA status screen displays. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server. 8. Select Status & Manage > Server. The server status screen is displayed. 9. Select the server to be backed out and click Stop. Click Ok to confirm the operation, then verify the Appl State changes to Disabled. 10. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 11. Select the tab of the server group containing the server to be backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is now Backout Ready. (Note: It may take a couple of minutes for the status to update.) |
| <p>2</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px auto;"></div> | <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>SSH to server</p> | <p>Use an SSH client to connect to the server (e.g. ssh, putty):</p> <pre>ssh <server address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>NOTE: If direct access to the IMI is not available, then access the target server via a connection through the Active NOAM. SSH to the Active NOAM XMI first. From there, SSH to the target server's IMI address.</p> |

Procedure 63: Backout Single Server

| | |
|---|--|
| <p>3</p> <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>Execute the backout</p> | <p>Execute following command to find the state of the server to be backed out. :</p> <pre>\$ ha.mystate</pre> <p>In the example output below, the HA state is Standby.</p> <pre>[admusr@SO2 ~]# ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.435 VIP Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.438 SbrBBaseRepl OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrBindingRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrSBaseRepl OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrSessionRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 CacdProcessRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 DA_MP_Leader OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.917 DSR_SLDB OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 VIP_DA_MP OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 EXGSTACK_Process OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 DSR_Process OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 CAPM_HELP_Proc Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.272 DSROAM_Proc OOS B2435.024 0 0128:081123.951</pre> <p>If the server being backed out is on release 7.0.1, and the state of the server is Active, then go back to step 1 above.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /var/TKLC/backout/reject</pre> <p>NOTE: If backout prompts to continue, answer “y”.</p> <p>(The reject command will create a no-hang-up shell session, so that the command will continue to execute if the user session is lost.)</p> <p>Sample output of the reject script:</p> <pre>Applications Enabled. Running /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/service_conf reconfig Remove isometadata (appRev) file from upgrade Reverting platform revision file RCS_VERSION=1.4 Creating boot script: /etc/rc3.d/S89backout Rebuilding RPM database. This may take a moment... rpmdb_load: /var/lib/rpm/Packages: unexpected file type or format Cleaning up chroot environment... A reboot of the server is required. The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds</pre> |
| <p>4</p> <p>Backout proceeds</p> | <p>Many informational messages are output to the terminal screen as the backout proceeds.</p> <p>Finally, after backout is complete, the server will automatically reboot.</p> |
| <p>5</p> <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>SSH to server</p> | <p>Use an SSH client to connect to the server (e.g. ssh, putty):</p> <pre>ssh <server address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> |

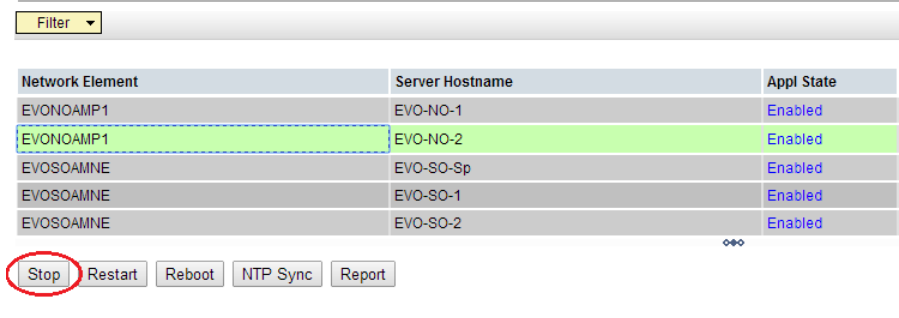
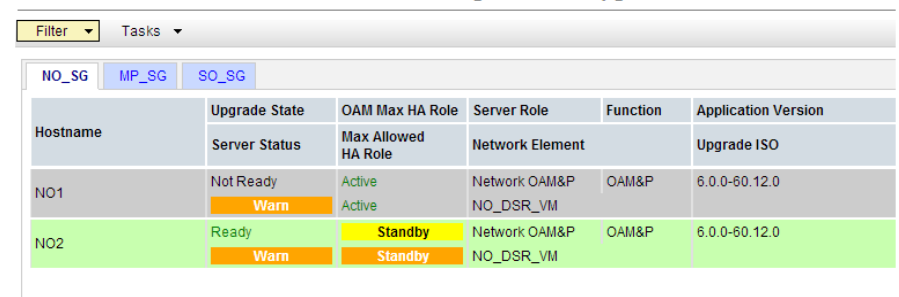
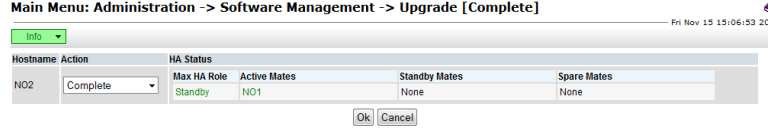
Procedure 63: Backout Single Server

| | |
|---|---|
| <p>6</p> <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>Restore the full DB run environment</p> | <p>1. Execute the backout_restore utility to restore the full database run environment:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /var/tmp/backout_restore</pre> <p>NOTE: If prompted to proceed, answer “y”.</p> <p>NOTE: In some incremental upgrade scenarios, the backout_restore file will not be found in the /var/tmp directory, resulting in the following error message:</p> <pre>/var/tmp/backout_restore: No such file or directory</pre> <p>If this message occurs, copy the file from /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin to /var/tmp and repeat sub-step 1.</p> <p>(The backout_restore command will create a no-hang-up shell session, so that the command will continue to execute if the user session is lost.)</p> <p>If the restore was successful, the following will be displayed:</p> <pre>Success: Full restore of COMCOL run env has completed. Return to the backout procedure document for further instruction.</pre> <p>If an error is encountered and reported by the utility, it is recommended to consult with MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document for further instructions.</p> |
| <p>7</p> <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>Verify the backout</p> | <p>1. Examine the output of the following commands to determine if any errors were reported:</p> <pre>\$ sudo verifyBackout</pre> <p>The following command will show the current rev on the server:</p> <pre>\$ appRev Install Time: Wed Feb 25 02:52:47 2015 Product Name: DSR Product Release: 7.1.0.0.0_71.10.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.0.0.0.0_86.14.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.0.0.0.0_86.14.0- OracleLinux6.5-x86_64.iso ISO name: DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.10.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.5</pre> <p>2. If the backout was not successful because other errors were recorded in the logs, it is recommended to contact MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document for further instructions.</p> <p>3. If the backout was successful (no errors or failures), then continue with the next step.</p> |
| <p>8</p> <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>Reboot the server</p> | <p>Enter the following command to reboot the server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>This step can take several minutes.</p> |

Procedure 63: Backout Single Server

| | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---|
| <p>9</p> <p>Verify services restart (NOAM/SOAM only)</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <p>If the server being backed out is a NOAM or SOAM, perform this step; otherwise proceed to step 9.</p> <p>Verify OAM services have restarted.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Wait several (approx. 6 minutes) minutes for a reboot to complete before attempting to log back into the server. 2. SSH to the server and log in. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> login as: admusr password: <enter password> 3. Execute the following command to verify the httpd service is running: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> \$ sudo service httpd status 4. The expected output displays httpd is running (the process IDs are variable so the list of numbers can be ignored): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> httpd <process IDs will be listed here> is running... <p>If httpd is not running, repeat sub-steps 3 and 4 for a few minutes. If httpd is still not running after 3 minutes, then services have failed to restart. It is recommended to contact MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document for further instructions.</p> |
| <p>10</p> <p>Verify server states</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Verify server state.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade to observe the server upgrade status. <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.1.1 or later:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. If the server status is Not Ready, proceed to step 11; otherwise proceed to step 13. <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. If the server status is Ready, proceed to step 12; otherwise proceed to step 13. |
| <p>11</p> <p>Correct Upgrade State on backed out server</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.1.x or later</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Modify the backed out server to transition the Upgrade State to Ready.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Status & Manage > HA The HA status screen is displayed. 2. Click the Edit button. 3. Select the backed out server and choose a Max Allowed HA Role value of Active (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). 4. Click the Ok button. 5. The HA status screen is displayed. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server. 6. Select Status & Manage > Server. The Server status screen is displayed. 7. Select the server being backed out and click Restart. Click Ok to confirm the operation. Verify the Appl State updates to Enabled. 8. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade; The Upgrade Status screen is displayed. 9. Select the tab of the server group containing the server that was backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is now Ready. (Note: It may take a couple of minutes for the status to update.) <p>Proceed to step 13 to complete this procedure.</p> |

Procedure 63: Backout Single Server


| | |
|---|--|
| <p>12</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Remove Upgrade Ready status</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</p> | <p>Remove Upgrade Ready status</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. Select Status & Manage > Server. The Server Status screen is displayed. If the server just backed-out shows an “Appl State” of “Enabled”, then select the server row and press the Stop button. <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Server</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a table with columns: Network Element, Server Hostname, and Appl State. The row for 'EVO-NO-2' is highlighted in green. Below the table are buttons for 'Stop', 'Restart', 'Reboot', 'NTP Sync', and 'Report'. The 'Stop' button is circled in red.</p> |
| <p>13</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Correct Upgrade State on backed out server</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</p> | <p>Change the upgrade state for the backed out server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. If the server just backed-out shows an Upgrade State of “Ready” or “Success”, then select the backed-out server and press Complete. Otherwise, skip to step 13. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a table with columns: Hostname, Upgrade State, OAM Max HA Role, Server Role, Function, and Application Version. The row for 'NO2' is highlighted in green. Below the table are buttons for 'Complete' and 'Cancel'.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The Upgrade [Complete] screen will appear. Leave the Action set to the default value of Complete. Click OK. This will update the Max Allowed HA Role of the backed-out server to Active, which will cause the server’s Upgrade State to move to Not Ready. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Complete]</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a dialog box with a table containing columns: Hostname, Action, Max HA Role, Active Mates, Standby Mates, and Spare Mates. The 'Complete' button is selected.</p> <p>The following SOAP error may appear in the GUI banner:</p> <pre>SOAP error while clearing upgrade status of hostname=[frame10311b6] ip=[172.16.1.28]</pre> <p>It is safe to ignore this error message.</p> |

Procedure 63: Backout Single Server

| | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>14 <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u> Verify application version</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade screen is displayed 2. Select the Server Group tab for the server that was backed out. 3. Verify the Application Version value for this server has been downgraded to the original release version. |
| <p>15 <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Procedure Complete</p> | <p>The single server backout is now complete.</p> <p>Return to the overall DSR backout procedure step that directed the execution of this procedure.</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |

7.6 Backout Multiple Servers

This section provides the procedures to backout the application software on multiple servers.

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>THIS PROCEDURE IS EXECUTED AS A COMPONENT OF THE EMERGENCY BACKOUT PROCEDURE (SECTION 7.3) OR THE NORMAL BACKOUT PROCEDURE (SECTION 7.4). THIS PROCEDURE SHOULD NEVER BE EXECUTED AS A STANDALONE PROCEDURE.</p> |
|---|--|

Procedure 64: Backout Multiple Servers

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure will backout the upgrade of DSR 7.1.x/7.2 application software for multiple servers. Any server requiring backout can be included: DA-MPs, SS7-MPs, IPFEs and SBRs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| <p>1</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px auto;"></div> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Prepare the server for backout.</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 and later</p> | <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.1.1 and later, perform this step; otherwise, proceed to step 2.</p> <p>Perform the following steps to prepare the server for backout.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 2. Select the server group tab containing the server to be backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is 'Accept or Reject'. <p>Make the server 'Backout Ready' as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Select Status & Manage > HA. The HA status screen displays. 4. Click the Edit button. 5. Select the server to be backed out and choose a Max Allowed HA Role value of Standby (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). <p>Note: When the Active NOAM is the server being upgraded, selecting OK will initiate an HA switchover, causing the GUI session to log out. Before logging into the Active OAM again, close and re-open the browser using the VIP address for the NOAM, and then clear the browser cache. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. Click the Ok button. 7. The HA status screen displays. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server. 8. Select Status & Manage > Server. The server status screen is displayed. 9. Select the server to be backed out and click Stop. Click Ok to confirm the operation, then verify the Appl State updates to Disabled. 10. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 11. Select the tab of the server group containing the server to be backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is now Backout Ready. (Note: It may take a couple of minutes for the status to update.) |
| <p>2</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 20px; height: 20px; margin: 5px auto;"></div> | <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>Login to the server(s)</p> | <p>Use an SSH client to connect to the server (e.g. ssh, putty):</p> <pre>ssh <server address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>NOTE: If direct access to the IMI is not available, then access the target server via a connection through the Active NOAM. SSH to the Active NOAM XMI first. From there, SSH to the target server's IMI address.</p> |

Procedure 64: Backout Multiple Servers

| | | |
|--|---------------------------|---|
| <p>3</p> <p>Execute the backout</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <p>Determine the state of the server to be backed out. The server role must be either Standby or Spare. Execute following command to find the state :</p> <pre>\$ ha.mystate</pre> <p>In the example output below, the HA state is Standby.</p> <pre>[admusr@SO2 ~]# ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.435 VIP Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.438 SbrBBaseRepl OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrBindingRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrSBaseRepl OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 SbrSessionRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 CacdProcessRes OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.918 DA_MP_Leader OOS B2435.024 0 0127:113601.917 DSR_SLDB OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 VIP_DA_MP OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 EXGSTACK_Process OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 DSR_Process OOS B2435.024 0-63 0127:113601.917 CAPM_HELP_Proc Stby B2435.024 0 0127:113603.272 DSROAM_Proc OOS B2435.024 0 0128:081123.951</pre> <p>If the state of the server is Active, then return to step 1 above.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /var/TKLC/backout/reject</pre> <p>NOTE: If backout prompts to continue, answer “y”.</p> <p>(The reject command will create a no-hang-up shell session, so that the command will continue to execute if the user session is lost.)</p> <p>Sample output of the reject script:</p> <pre>Applications Enabled. Running /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/service_conf reconfig Remove isometadata (appRev) file from upgrade Reverting platform revision file RCS_VERSION=1.4 Creating boot script: /etc/rc3.d/S89backout Rebuilding RPM database. This may take a moment... rpmdb_load: /var/lib/rpm/Packages: unexpected file type or format Cleaning up chroot environment... A reboot of the server is required. The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds</pre> |
| <p>4</p> <p>Backout proceeds</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <p>Many informational messages are output to the terminal screen as the backout proceeds.</p> <p>Finally, after backout is complete, the server will automatically reboot.</p> |
| <p>5</p> <p>Repeat for each server to be backed out.</p> | | <p>Repeat steps 1 through 4 for each server to be backed out.</p> |
| <p>6</p> <p>Login to the server</p> | | <p>Use an SSH client to connect to the server (e.g. ssh, putty):</p> <pre>ssh <server address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> |

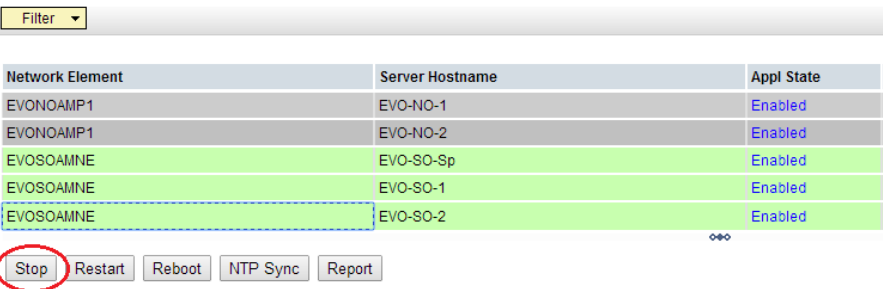
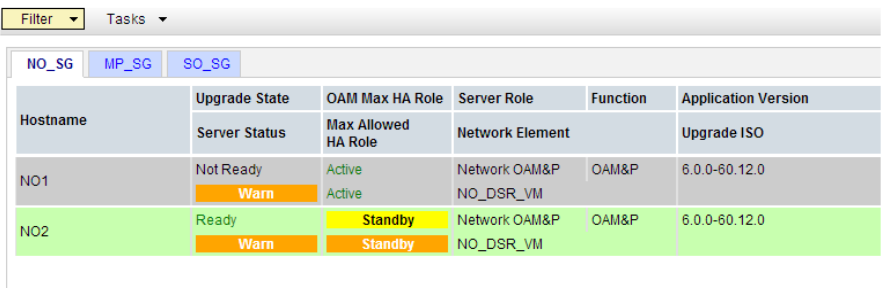
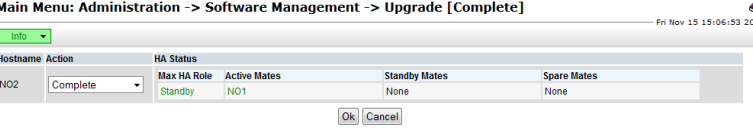
Procedure 64: Backout Multiple Servers

| | | |
|---|---------------------------|--|
| <p>7</p> <p>Restore the full DB run environment</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <p>1. Execute the backout_restore utility to restore the full database run environment:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /var/tmp/backout_restore</pre> <p>If prompted to proceed, answer “y”.</p> <p>NOTE: In some incremental upgrade scenarios, the backout_restore file will not be found in the /var/tmp directory, resulting in the following error message:</p> <pre>/var/tmp/backout_restore: No such file or directory</pre> <p>If this message occurs, copy the file from /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin to /var/tmp and repeat sub-step 1.</p> <p>(The backout_restore command will create a no-hang-up shell session, so that the command will continue to execute if the user session is lost.)</p> <p>If the restore was successful, the following will be displayed:</p> <pre>Success: Full restore of COMCOL run env has completed. Return to the backout procedure document for further instruction.</pre> <p>If an error is encountered and reported by the utility, it is recommended to consult with MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document for further instructions.</p> |
| <p>8</p> <p>Verify the backout</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <p>1. Examine the output of the following commands to determine if any errors were reported:</p> <pre>\$ sudo verifyBackout</pre> <p>The following command will show the current rev on the server:</p> <pre>\$ appRev Install Time: Wed Feb 25 02:52:47 2015 Product Name: DSR Product Release: 7.1.0.0.0_71.10.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.0.0.0.0_86.14.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.0.0.0.0_86.14.0- OracleLinux6.5-x86_64.iso ISO name: DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.10.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.5</pre> <p>2. If the backout was not successful because other errors were recorded in the logs, it is recommended to contact MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document for further instructions.</p> <p>3. If the backout was successful (no errors or failures), then continue with the next step.</p> |
| <p>9</p> <p>Reboot the server</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <p>Enter the following command to reboot the server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>This step can take several minutes.</p> |

Procedure 64: Backout Multiple Servers

| | | |
|---|--------------------------------|---|
| <p>10</p> <p>Verify services restart (NOAM/SOAM only)</p> | <p>Server CLI:</p> | <p>If the server being backed out is a NOAM or SOAM, perform this step; otherwise proceed to step 11.</p> <p>Verify OAM services have restarted:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Wait several (approx. 6 minutes) minutes for a reboot to complete before attempting to log back into the server. SSH to the server and log in. <pre>login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> Execute the following command to verify the httpd service is running. <pre>\$ sudo service httpd status</pre> The expected output displays httpd is running (the process IDs are variable so the list of numbers can be ignored): <pre>httpd <process IDs will be listed here> is running...</pre> <p>If httpd is not running, repeat sub-steps 3 and 4 for a few minutes. If httpd is still not running after 3 minutes, then services have failed to restart. It is recommended to contact MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document for further instructions.</p> |
| <p>11</p> <p>Repeat for each server backed out</p> | | <p>Repeat steps 6 through 10 for each server backed out.</p> |
| <p>12</p> <p>Verify server states</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Verify server state is correct after the backout.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade to observe the server upgrade status. <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.1.1 or later:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the server status is Not Ready, proceed to step 13; otherwise proceed to step 16. <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the server status is Ready, proceed to step 14; otherwise proceed to step 16. |
| <p>13</p> <p>Correct Upgrade State on backed out server</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 or later</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Modify the backed out server to transition the Upgrade State to Ready.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Select Status & Manage > HA The HA status screen is displayed. Click the Edit button. Select the backed out server and choose a Max Allowed HA Role value of Active (unless it is a Query server, in which case the value should remain set to Observer). Click the Ok button. The HA status screen is displayed. Verify the Max Allowed HA Role is set to the desired value for the server. Select Status & Manage > Server. The Server status screen is displayed. Select the server being backed out and click Restart. Click Ok to confirm the operation. Verify the Appl State updates to Enabled. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade; The Upgrade Status screen is displayed. Select the tab of the server group containing the server that was backed out. Verify the Upgrade State is now Ready. (Note: It may take a couple of minutes for the status to update.) <p>Proceed to step 16 to complete the procedure.</p> |

Procedure 64: Backout Multiple Servers

| | | |
|-----------|--|---|
| <p>14</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Remove Upgrade Ready status</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</p> | <p>Remove Upgrade Ready status</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Server. The Server Status screen is displayed. 3. If the servers just backed-out show an “AppI State” of Enabled, then multi-select the server rows and press the Stop button. 4. Click OK on the confirmation dialog box. <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Server</p>  |
| <p>15</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Correct Upgrade State on backed out server</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</p> | <p>Correct the upgrade status on the backed out server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 2. If the servers just backed-out show an Upgrade State of “Ready” or “Success”, then select the backed-out server and press the Complete button. <p>If the servers just backed out show an Upgrade State of “Not Ready”, then proceed to step 16.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. The Upgrade [Complete] screen will appear. Leave the Action set to hte default value of Complete. 4. Click OK. This will update the Max Allowed HA Role of the backed-out server to Active, which will cause the server’s Upgrade State to move to Not Ready. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Complete]</p>  <p>The following SOAP error may appear in the GUI banner:</p> <pre>SOAP error while clearing upgrade status of hostname=[frame10311b6] ip=[172.16.1.28]</pre> <p>It is safe to ignore this error message.</p> |

Procedure 64: Backout Multiple Servers

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| <p>16</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Verify application version</p> | <p>Verify the application version of the backed out server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade screen is displayed 2. Select the Server Group tab for the server that was backed out. 3. Verify the Application Version value for this server has been downgraded to the original release version. |
| <p>17</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Procedure Complete</p> | <p>The multiple server backout procedure is now complete.</p> <p>Return to the overall DSR backout procedure step that directed the execution of this procedure.</p> |
| <p><i>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</i></p> | | |

7.7 IDIH Backout

The procedures in this section back out the Oracle, Application, and Mediation servers to the previous release.

7.7.1 Oracle Server Backout

This procedure backs out the Oracle server.

Procedure 65: Oracle Server Backout

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure performs a backout of the Oracle server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Oracle Server CLI</u> Login to the server</p> | <p>Use an SSH client to connect to the Oracle server (e.g. ssh, putty):</p> <pre>ssh <server address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p><u>Oracle Server CLI</u> Backout the server</p> | <p>Execute the following commands to back out the server.</p> <pre>sudo /opt/xIH/plat/bin/db_rollback.sh MED sudo /opt/xiH/plat/bin/db_rollback.sh APP</pre> |

7.7.2 Mediation and Application Server Backout

The Mediation and Application servers are backed out using the disaster recovery procedure documented in [7]

7.8 Post-Backout Health Check

This procedure is used to determine the health and status of the DSR network and servers following the backout.

Procedure 66: Post-Backout Health Check

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| S | This procedure performs a basic Health Check of the DSR to verify the health of the system following a backout. | |
| T | Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. | |
| E | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| P | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| # | SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | |
| 1. | Active NOAM VIP: | Verify Server Status is Normal |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Verify Server Status is Normal | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Server. The Server Status screen is displayed. 3. Verify Server Status is Normal (Norm) for Alarm (Alm), Database (DB) and Processes (Proc). 4. Do not proceed with the upgrade if any server status is not Norm. 5. Do not proceed with the upgrade if there are any Major or Critical alarms. <p>NOTE: It is recommended to troubleshoot if any server status is not Norm. A backout should return the servers to their pre-upgrade status.</p> |
| 2. | Active NOAM VIP: | Log all current alarms in the system: |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | Log all current alarms | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select Alarms & Events > View Active. The Alarms & Events > View Active screen is displayed. 2. Click the Report button to generate an Alarms report. 3. Save the report and print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

8 APPENDICES

Appendix A. POST UPGRADE PROCEDURES


The procedures in this section are executed only *AFTER* the upgrade of *ALL* servers in the topology is completed.

Appendix A.1. Accept Upgrade

Detailed steps for accepting the upgrade are shown in the procedure below. TPD requires that upgrades be accepted or rejected before any subsequent upgrades may be performed. Alarm 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject) will be displayed for each server until one of these two actions is performed.

An upgrade should be accepted only after it is determined to be successful as the Accept is final. This frees up file storage but prevents a backout from the previous upgrade.

NOTE: Once the upgrade is accepted for a server, that server will not be allowed to backout to a previous release.

| | |
|---|--|
|  | <p>UPGRADE ACCEPTANCE MAY ONLY BE EXECUTED WITH AUTHORIZATION FROM THE CUSTOMER.</p> <p>!! WARNING!! THE USER SHOULD BE AWARE THAT ONCE UPGRADE HAS BEEN ACCEPTED, IT WILL NOT BE POSSIBLE TO BACKOUT TO THE PREVIOUS RELEASE.</p> |
|---|--|

Procedure 67: Accept Upgrade

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure accepts a successful upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>It is recommended that this procedure be performed two weeks after the upgrade.</p> | <p>Verify that the upgraded system has been stable for two weeks or more.</p> <p>NOTE: It will not be possible to backout after this is procedure is executed.</p> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP: Execute this Step if accepting a NOAM server.</p> <p>Log all current alarms present at the NOAM.</p> | <p>Log all alarms before accepting the NOAM upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI. 2. Select Alarms & Events > View Active. The Alarms & Events > View Active screen is displayed. 3. Click the Report button to generate an Alarms report. 4. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. <p>All other upgraded servers will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active SOAM VIP: Execute this Step if accepting a SOAM server.</p> <p>Log all current alarms present at the SOAM.</p> | <p>Log all alarms before accepting the SOAM upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the SOAM GUI. 2. Select Alarms & Events > View Active. The Alarms & Events > View Active screen is displayed. 3. Click the Report button to generate an Alarms report. 4. Save the report and/or print the report. Keep these copies for future reference. <p>All other upgraded servers will have the following expected alarm: Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> |

Procedure 67: Accept Upgrade

| <p>4.</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Accept upgrade for multiple servers</p> | <p>Accept the upgrade in multiple servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Administration >Software Management >Upgrade. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 3. Select the server Groups tabs and select the servers (using the Ctrl button) for which upgrade is to be accepted, considering traffic, as Accept upgrade may lead to a server reboot. 4. Click the Accept button | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter <input type="text"/> Tasks <input type="text"/></p> <p>NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl Max HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> <th colspan="2"></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Accept or Reject Warn</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.11.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td>DSR-7.1.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Accept or Reject Warn</td> <td>Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.11.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td>N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. A confirmation dialog will warn that once accepted, the server will not be able to revert back to the previous image state. 6. Click Ok. The Upgrade Administration screen re-displays. 7. Select Alarms & Events > View Active. The Alarms & Events > View Active screen displays. <p>As upgrade is accepted on each server, the corresponding Alarm ID - 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject) should automatically clear.</p> | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | NO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | DSR-7.1.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso | NO1 | Accept or Reject Warn | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | |
|---|---|--|---------------|---------------|--------------------------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|--|--|-----|--------------------------|---------|---------------|-------|-----------------|--|--|-----|-----------|--|--------------------------------|-----|--------------------------|--------|---------------|-------|-----------------|--|--|-----|-----------|--|--|
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | DSR-7.1.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Accept or Reject Warn | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>5.</p> <p>Accept upgrade of the rest of the system</p> | <p>Repeat step 4 until the upgrade of all Servers within the system has been accepted.</p> | <p>Repeat step 4 until the upgrade of all Servers within the system has been accepted.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Appendix A.2. Undeploy ISO

This procedure is run after the upgrade has been Accepted to undeploy all deployed ISOs. When an ISO is undeployed, the ISO is deleted from all servers in the topology except for the Active NOAM. On the Active NOAM, the ISO remains in the File Management Area.

This procedure can be run at anytime after the upgrade has been Accepted.

Procedure 68: Undeploy ISO

| | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure undeploys an ISO from the DSR servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>View files</p> | <p>View the files in the File Management Area on the Active NOAM.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Select Status & Manage > Files. The Files screen is displayed. |
| 2. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Start ISO undeploy</p> | <p>Start the ISO undeploy sequence.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select an ISO that is stored in the isos directory of the File Management Area. The ISO filename will have the format: <code>isos/DSR-7.2.0.0.0_72.25.0-x86_64.iso</code> 2. Click the Undeploy ISO button. 3. Click OK in the confirmation dialog box to start the undeploy sequence. After clicking Ok the Status & Manage > Files screen will refresh. |
| 3. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Monitor progress</p> | <p>Monitor the ISO undeploy progress.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Select the ISO being deployed in step 2. 2. Click the View ISO Deployment Report button. 3. If some servers show the ISO as "Deployed", click the Back button on the Files [View] page 4. Periodically repeat sub-steps 1 thru 3 until all servers indicate "Not Deployed". <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files [View]</p> <hr/> <p style="text-align: center;">Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Files [View] Mon Jun 13 12:27:31 2016 UTC</p> <p>Deployment report for DSR-7.3.0.0.0_73.12.0-x86_64.iso:</p> <p>Deployed on 5/7 servers.</p> <pre> NO1: Not Deployed NO2: Deployed SO1: Not Deployed SO2: Deployed MP1: Deployed MP2: Deployed IPFE: Deployed </pre> <p style="text-align: center;">Print Save Back</p> </div> |
| 4. | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Repeat as necessary</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If there are additional ISOs in the File Management Area that need to be undeployed, repeat steps 2 and 3 as necessary. |

Appendix A.3. PCA Activation

CAUTION

THIS PROCEDURE IS FOR PCA SYSTEMS ONLY!

Procedure 69 must be executed on PCA systems after the upgrade to DSR 7.1.x/7.2 is Accepted. Do not run this procedure until *after* Procedure 67 has been completed. This procedure executes the PCA top level activation script to remedy a potential PCA activation issue from earlier releases.

Procedure 69: PCA Post Upgrade Procedure

| | | |
|--|---|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure executes the PCA top level activation script.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT <u>MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</u></p> | |
| 1. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active NOAM CLI:</u> Log into the Active NOAM | Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems - or putty if running on Windows) to log into the Active NOAM: <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> |
| 2. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active NOAM CLI</u> Run PCA activation script | Execute the top level PCA script: <pre>/usr/TKLC/dsr/prod/maint/loaders/activate/load.pcaActivationTopLevel</pre> <p>At the completion of the activation script, the following message is output:</p> <pre>Execution of PCA Activation Script complete.</pre> |
| 3. <input type="checkbox"/> | <u>Active NOAM CLI</u> Clear cache | Execute the following command to reset the initialization caches: <pre>clearCache</pre> |
| <p>THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.</p> | | |

Appendix B. COMMAND OUTPUTS

Not Applicable.

Appendix C. PCRF POOLING MIGRATION CHECK

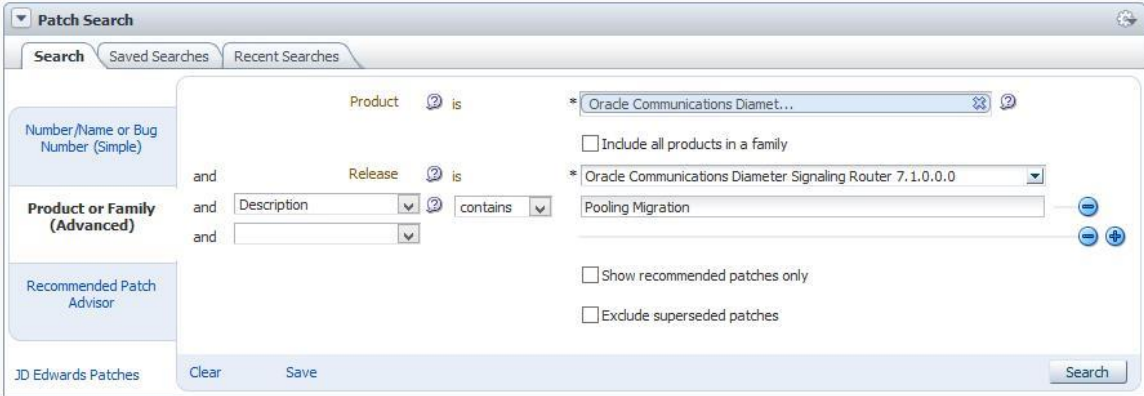
If the PCA application has been activated and the PDRA feature has been enabled, a check of the PCRF Pooling Migration is **REQUIRED** prior to the start of a major upgrade to DSR 7.1.1 and later.

The PCRF Pooling Migration check is NOT required for a DSR 7.1.x or 7.2 incremental upgrade.

Follow the steps in Procedure 70 to execute the PCRF Pooling Migration Check:

Note: If the PCRF Pooling Migration is NOT complete, this check must be repeated until PCRF Pooling Migration Tool indicates that the migration is complete.


Procedure 70: PCRF Pooling Migration Check

| | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|---|--|
| S T E P # | This procedure checks the PCRF Pooling Migration status to determine if the migration is complete. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE. | | |
| | 1. | Download PCRF Pooling Migration Tool | Download the PCRF Pooling Migration Tool from MOS. The tool is used to determine the status of the PCRF pooling migration. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to the MOS site at https://support.oracle.com/ and sign in. 2. Select the Patches & Updates tab 3. In the Patch Search window, select the Product or Family (Advanced) tab on left. 4. Use the following search criteria to locate and download the migration tool (as shown in the figure below): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Product is: Oracle Communications Diameter Signaling Router (DSR) • Release is: Oracle Communications Diameter Signaling Router (DSR) 7.1.0.0.0 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ <i>Note: The 7.1 Migration Tool is also valid for DSR 7.2.</i> • Description contains: Pooling Migration |
| |  | | |
| | 2. | Copy the PCRF Pooling Migration Tool | Copy the PCRF Pooling Migration Tool to the Active NOAM. <pre>scp -p <patchfilename> admusr@<Active_NOAM></pre> |
| | 3. | SSH to the Active NOAM | Using a SSH tool, login to the Active NOAM server. <pre>ssh admusr@<NOAM_VIP></pre> |
| 4. | Active NOAM CLI: Move the patch file | Move the patch file to the working directory: <pre>sudo mv <patchfilename> /usr/TKLC/dsr/tools</pre> | |

Procedure 70: PCRF Pooling Migration Check

| | | |
|----|--|---|
| 5. | Active NOAM CLI: <input type="checkbox"/> Change directory to the PCA tool directory | Change directories using the following command: <pre>cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/tools/</pre> |
| 6. | Active NOAM CLI: <input type="checkbox"/> Unzip the patch | Unzip the PCRF Pooling Migration Tool using the "unzip" command. Example: <pre>sudo unzip <patchfilename></pre> |
| 7. | Active NOAM CLI: <input type="checkbox"/> Check the PCRF Pooling Migration Status | Check the PCRF Pooling Migration Status using the following command: <pre>./verifyPCRFPoolingMigration.sh --checkPCRFPoolingMigrationStatus</pre> <p>Sample output:</p> <pre>Preparing log directory ... Creating log directory... Logging is started in /var/TKLC/log/migrationStatusToolLogs/migrationStatusTool.log Preparation of log directory done. ===== Execution of PCRF Pooling Migration Verification Tool Started ===== Checking host server status whether it is active NOAMP server or not. This server is Active NOAMP server. Application Release is 7.0.1.0.0 PDRA/PCA application is activated on this system. 'PCRFPooling' feature is enabled on this system. PCRF Pooling Migration is not required. No need to check PCRF pool migration status. Exiting ... PCRF Pooling Migration is completed or not required on all servers. Execute tool again with option --verifyUpgradeAllowed to check if upgrade is allowed or not. ===== Execution of PCRF Pooling Migration Verification Tool Completed =====</pre> |
| 8. | Active NOAM CLI: <input type="checkbox"/> Verify that PCRF Pooling Migration is complete | After executing the PCRF Pooling Migration tool, determine if the PCRF Pooling Migration has completed using the following command: <pre>./verifyPCRFPoolingMigration.sh --verifyUpgradeAllowed</pre> <p>Note: This command will inform the user if the PCRF Pooling Migration has completed.</p> <p>If PCRF Pooling Migration is complete, the command will print the following output: <pre>"Upgrade is allowed."</pre></p> <p>If PCRF Pooling Migration is NOT complete, the command will print the following output: <pre>"Upgrade is not allowed."</pre></p> |

Procedure 70: PCRF Pooling Migration Check

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| 9.  | Active NOAM CLI: Estimate PCRF Pooling Migration Completion Optional | If the PCRF Pooling Migration is not complete, the user may get an estimate of when the PCRF Pooling Migration will be complete. Execute the PCRF Pooling Migration Completion Estimate tool using the following command: <code>./verifyPCRFPoolingMigration.sh --estimateMigrationCompletionTime</code> Note: Once complete, this command will output the estimated PCRF Pooling Migration in Days, Hours, Minutes and Seconds. Example: <code>Estimated total time for migration completion for all binding servers is: 3 days 4 hours 45 minutes 34 seconds.</code> |
|--|--|--|

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

Appendix D. UPGRADE SINGLE SERVER – UPGRADE ADMINISTRATION

This Appendix provides the procedure for upgrading a DSR single server of any type (NOAM, SOAM, MP, etc).

Note that this procedure will be executed multiple times during the overall upgrade, depending on the number of servers in the DSR. Make multiple copies of Appendix D to mark up, or keep another form of written record of the steps performed.

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| S T E P # | <p>This procedure executes the Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration steps.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|---------------------------|----------|---------------------|--|--|--|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|-------|--------|-----------|-------|-----------------|--|------|-----|--|--|--|-----|-------|---------|-----------|-------|-----------------|--|------|-----|--|--|--|
| 1 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>View the pre-upgrade status of Servers</p> | <p>View the pre-upgrade status</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP Select Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed (example below): <p>The Active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="6" style="text-align: left;">NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Appl Max HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td style="color: green;">Ready</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0-71.31.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="background-color: orange; color: white; text-align: center;">Warn</td> <td>N/A</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td style="color: green;">Ready</td> <td style="background-color: yellow; color: black; text-align: center;">Standby</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.1.0-71.31.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="color: green;">Norm</td> <td>N/A</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Backup"/> <input type="button" value="Backup All"/> <input type="button" value="Auto Upgrade"/> <input type="button" value="Accept"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> <input type="button" value="Report All"/> </p> </div> | NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | | | | | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Ready | Active | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0-71.31.0 | | Warn | N/A | | | | NO2 | Ready | Standby | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0-71.31.0 | | Norm | N/A | | | |
| NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Ready | Active | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Warn | N/A | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Ready | Standby | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.1.0-71.31.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Norm | N/A | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2 | <p>Verify status of Server to be upgraded</p> | <p>For the server to be upgraded:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Identify the server (NOAM, SOAM, MP, etc) _____ (record name) Verify the Application Version value is the expected source software release version. From the Administration > Software Management > Upgrade screen, select the Server Group of the server to be upgraded. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

Filter Tasks

| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version |
|-----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| GTR-MP-01 | Backup Needed | Spare | MP | DSR (multi-active cluster) | 7.0.0.0-70.7.0 |
| GTR-MP-02 | Backup Needed | Spare | MP | DSR (multi-active cluster) | 7.0.0.0-70.7.0 |
| GTR-MP-03 | Backup Needed | Spare | MP | DSR (multi-active cluster) | 7.0.0.0-70.7.0 |
| GTR-MP-04 | Backup Needed | Spare | MP | DSR (multi-active cluster) | 7.0.0.0-70.7.0 |

- If the server is in the **“Backup Needed”** state, select the server and click the **“Backup”** button. On the **Upgrade [Backup]** screen, click **‘Ok’**. The Upgrade State changes to **“Backup in Progress”**.
- Verify the **“OAM Max Ha Role”** is the expected condition (either **Standby or Active**) (this will depend on the server being upgraded)

For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1:
When the backup is complete, verify the server state changes to **“Not Ready”**.
Perform steps 3 thru 10.

For Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 or later:
When the backup is complete, verify the server state changes to **“Ready”**.
Proceed to step 11.

3 Active NOAM VIP:

Prepare Upgrade (step 1)

For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only

This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.

For the server to be upgraded:

- On the Upgrade form, make the server ‘Upgrade Ready’, by selecting the server to be upgraded, and selecting the **Prepare** button.

(In this example, an NOAM with name “NO2” will be made ready for Upgrade)

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

Filter Tasks

| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version |
|----------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|----------|---------------------|
| NO1 | Not Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 |
| NO2 | Not Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 |

Backup ISO Cleanup **Prepare** Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| <p>4</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Prepare Upgrade (step 2)</p> <p><u>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</u></p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> <p>Prepare the server for upgrade.</p> <p>The Upgrade [Prepare] form is displayed.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Prepare]</p> <p>Info ▾</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Hostname</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Action</th> <th colspan="3" style="text-align: left;">HA Status</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th></th> <th style="text-align: left;">Max HA Role</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Active Mates</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Standby Mates</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Prepare ▾</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>NO2</td> <td>None</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;">Ok Cancel</p> </div> <p>For the Max Ha Role:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Verify the selected server status is the expected condition (either Standby or Active) (this will depend on the server being upgraded) 2. If the state of the server to be upgraded is as expected, select Ok. <p>NOTE: When the Active NOAM is the server being upgraded, selecting OK will initiate an HA switchover, causing the GUI session to log out. Before logging into the Active OAM again, close and re-open the browser using the VIP address for the NOAM, and then clear the browser cache. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared.</p> <p>NOTE: If the selected server is the active server in an Active/Standby pair, the Max HA Role column will display “Active” with a red background. This is NOT an alarm condition. This indicator is to make the user aware that the Make Ready action WILL cause an HA switchover.</p> | Hostname | Action | HA Status | | | | | Max HA Role | Active Mates | Standby Mates | NO1 | Prepare ▾ | Standby | NO2 | None |
|----------|---|--|--------------|---------------|-----------|--|--|--|--|-------------|--------------|---------------|-----|-----------|---------|-----|------|
| Hostname | Action | HA Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Max HA Role | Active Mates | Standby Mates | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Prepare ▾ | Standby | NO2 | None | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| 5 | <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 15px; height: 15px; margin-bottom: 5px;"></div> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify upgrade status is "Ready"</p> <p><u>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</u></p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> <p>Verify the server upgrade status is ready.</p> <p>Upon preparing the selected server, the Upgrade Administration form will refresh, and the server to be upgraded will show Upgrade State = Ready (This may take a minute)</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <p>NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Max Allowed HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th colspan="3">Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td style="color: green;">Ready</td> <td style="color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>6.0.0-60.24.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="color: orange;">Warn</td> <td style="color: orange;">Standby</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td style="color: red;">Not Ready</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>6.0.0-60.24.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="color: red;">Err</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.</p> <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms. NOTE: Not all servers have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure) | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | NO1 | Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | Warn | Standby | NO_DSR_VM | | | NO2 | Not Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | |
|---------------|---|---|--|----------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|-------------|--|--|-----|-------|---------|---------------|-------|---------------|--|------|---------|-----------|--|--|-----|-----------|--------|---------------|-------|---------------|--|-----|--------|-----------|--|--|
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Ready | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Warn | Standby | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Not Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| <p>6</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Initiate Upgrade (part 1)</p> <p><u>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</u></p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> <p>Initiate the upgrade on the server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the server to be upgraded. Click the “Initiate” button <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter Tasks</p> <p>NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <th></th> <th>Server Status</th> <th>Max Allowed HA Role</th> <th>Network Element</th> <th></th> <th>Upgrade ISO</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Ready Warn</td> <td>Standby Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>6.0.0-60.24.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Not Ready Err</td> <td>Active Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>6.0.0-60.24.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All</p> </div> | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Ready Warn | Standby Standby | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | NO2 | Not Ready Err | Active Active | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 |
|--|--|---|----------------------------|-----------------|---------------------|---------------|---|--|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|---------------|--------------------|----------------------------|-------|---------------|-----|------------------|------------------|----------------------------|-------|---------------|
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Ready Warn | Standby Standby | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Not Ready Err | Active Active | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>7</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Initiate Upgrade (part 2)</p> <p><u>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</u></p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> <p>Initiate the upgrade on the server.</p> <p>The Initiate Upgrade form will be displayed: Administration > Software Management > Upgrade [Initiate]</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Upgrade Image – Upgrade ISO pick list, select the ISO to use in the server upgrade, Click the Ok button. The upgrade will begin and control will return to the Upgrade Administration screen. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]</p> <p>Info</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th>Status</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Start upgrade</td> <td>Network Element: NO_DSR_VM Server Group: NO_SG Application Version: 6.0.0-60.24.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Upgrade Image</p> <p>Upgrade ISO: DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso Select the desired upgrade ISO media file.</p> <p>Ok Cancel</p> </div> | Hostname | Action | Status | NO1 | Start upgrade | Network Element: NO_DSR_VM Server Group: NO_SG Application Version: 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Action | Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Start upgrade | Network Element: NO_DSR_VM Server Group: NO_SG Application Version: 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

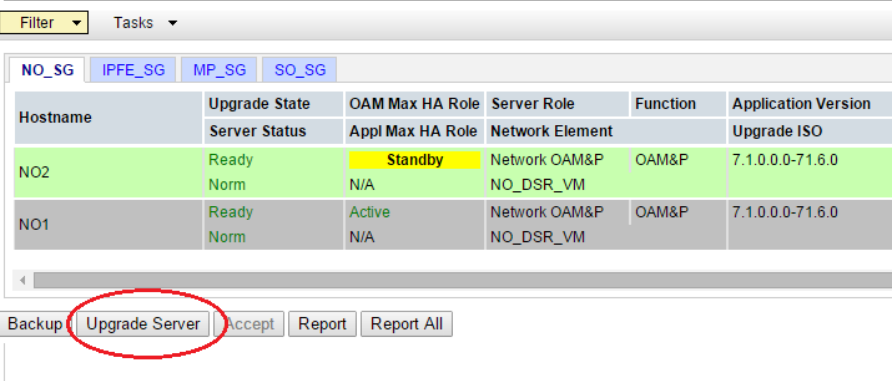
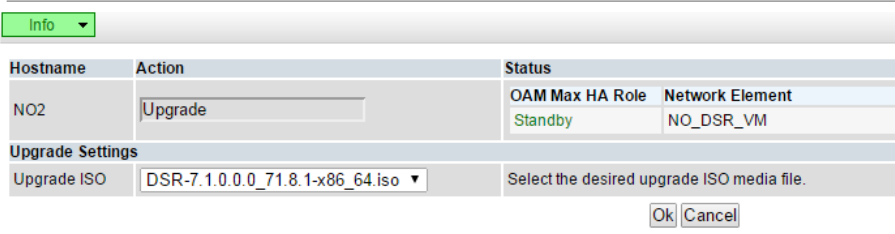
Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| <p>8</p> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>View In-Progress Status (monitor)</p> <p><u>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</u></p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> <p>View the Upgrade Administration form to monitor upgrade progress.</p> <p>See step 14 for an optional method of monitoring upgrade progress.</p> <p>See step 15 below for instructions if the Upgrade fails, or if execution time exceeds 60 minutes.</p> <p><i>NOTE: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the Upgrade will be shown as “FAILED”. The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.</i></p> <p>1. Observe the Upgrade State of the server of interest. Upgrade status will be displayed under the Status Message column.</p> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">Filter</td> <td style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">Status</td> <td style="background-color: #f0f0f0;">Tasks</td> <td colspan="5"></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">NO_SG</td> <td style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">IPFE_SG</td> <td style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">MP_SG</td> <td style="background-color: #e0e0e0;">SO_SG</td> <td colspan="4"></td> </tr> <tr> <th style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Hostname</th> <th style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Upgrade State</th> <th style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">OAM Max HA Role</th> <th style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Server Role</th> <th style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Function</th> <th style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Application Version</th> <th style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Start Time</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Server Status</td> <td style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Appl Max HA Role</td> <td style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Network Element</td> <td style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">OAM&P</td> <td style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Upgrade ISO</td> <td style="background-color: #d0d0d0;">Status Message</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Upgrading Unk</td> <td style="color: red;">OOS</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>DSR-7.1.0.0_718.1-x86_64.iso</td> <td>2015-01-29 10:49:57 EST Upgrade is in progress</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Ready Err</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.6.0</td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms. Note: Not all servers will have all alarms:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning) Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited) Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server) Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure) Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure) Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down) Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure) Alarm ID = 31104 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed) <p>2. Wait for the upgrade to complete. The “Status Message” column will show “Success”. This step will take approximately 20 to 50 minutes.</p> <p>If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with MOS on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix J for failed server recovery procedures.</p> | Filter | Status | Tasks | | | | | | NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Start Time | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | OAM&P | Upgrade ISO | Status Message | NO2 | Upgrading Unk | OOS | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | DSR-7.1.0.0_718.1-x86_64.iso | 2015-01-29 10:49:57 EST Upgrade is in progress | NO1 | Ready Err | Active N/A | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.6.0 | |
|-----------------|---|---|-----------------|----------|------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|-------|---------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|-------|-------------|----------------|-----|------------------|-----|-----------|-------|------------------------------|---|-----|--------------|---------------|-----------|-------|----------------|--|
| Filter | Status | Tasks | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Start Time | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | OAM&P | Upgrade ISO | Status Message | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Upgrading Unk | OOS | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | DSR-7.1.0.0_718.1-x86_64.iso | 2015-01-29 10:49:57 EST Upgrade is in progress | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Ready Err | Active N/A | NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.6.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| 9 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Take the upgraded server out of the upgrade SUCCESS state (part 1)</p> <p><u>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</u></p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> <p>Take the upgraded server out of the upgrade ready state. This step applies to all servers, regardless of type.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade 2. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 3. Verify the Application Version value for this server has been updated to the target software release version. 4. Verify status: 5. Verify the Upgrade State of the server that was upgraded is Success. 6. Select the server that was upgraded 7. Click the Complete button. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>Filter</td> <td>Tasks</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="text-align: center;"> NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG </td> </tr> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Max Allowed HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td style="color: green;">Success</td> <td style="color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.11.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="color: red;">Err</td> <td style="color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td style="border: 1px solid red;">DSR-7.1.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td style="color: red;">Not Ready</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>6.0.0-60.24.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="color: red;">Err</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="6" style="text-align: center;"> Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All </td> </tr> </table> </div> | Filter | Tasks | NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Success | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | Err | Standby | NO_DSR_VM | | DSR-7.1.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso | NO2 | Not Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | | Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|---|-----------------|---------------|---|--|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|-------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|---------|-------------|------|---------|-------------------------------------|---------------|-------|-----------------|--|-----|---------|-----------|---|--------------------------------|----------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|----------|---------------------|--|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|--|------------------|---------|---------------|-------|-----------------|--|-----|--------|-----------|--|--|-----|-----------|--------|---------------|-------|---------------|--|-----|--------|-----------|--|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Filter | Tasks | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Success | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Err | Standby | NO_DSR_VM | | DSR-7.1.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Not Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 10 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Take the upgraded server out of the upgrade SUCCESS state (part 2)</p> <p><u>For Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only</u></p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.0.1 only.</p> <p>The Upgrade[Complete] screen is displayed</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse; margin-top: 10px;"> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Action</th> <th colspan="4">HA Status</th> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Complete</td> <td>Max HA Role</td> <td>Active Mates</td> <td>Standby Mates</td> <td>Spare Mates</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <td style="color: green;">Standby</td> <td>NO1</td> <td>None</td> <td>None</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="6" style="text-align: center;"> Ok Cancel </td> </tr> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click OK. This completes the upgrade action on the server. The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 2. Wait for the screen to refresh and show the Upgrade State as Accept or Reject. It may take up to 2 minutes for the Upgrade State to change to Accept or Reject. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>Filter</td> <td>Tasks</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2" style="text-align: center;"> NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG </td> </tr> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Max Allowed HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td style="color: red; border: 1px solid red; border-radius: 50%; padding: 2px;">Accept or Reject</td> <td style="color: yellow;">Standby</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.11.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="color: red;">Err</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td style="color: red;">Not Ready</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>Network OAM&P</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>6.0.0-60.24.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="color: red;">Err</td> <td style="color: green;">Active</td> <td>NO_DSR_VM</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="6" style="text-align: center;"> Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All </td> </tr> </table> </div> <p style="color: red; margin-top: 10px;">Proceed to step 17 to complete this procedure.</p> | Hostname | Action | HA Status | | | | NO2 | Complete | Max HA Role | Active Mates | Standby Mates | Spare Mates | | | Standby | NO1 | None | None | Ok Cancel | | | | | | Filter | Tasks | NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Accept or Reject | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | | NO2 | Not Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | | Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All | | | | | |
| Hostname | Action | HA Status | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Complete | Max HA Role | Active Mates | Standby Mates | Spare Mates | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Standby | NO1 | None | None | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Ok Cancel | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Filter | Tasks | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Max Allowed HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Accept or Reject | Standby | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.11.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Not Ready | Active | Network OAM&P | OAM&P | 6.0.0-60.24.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Err | Active | NO_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Backup ISO Cleanup Prepare Initiate Complete Accept Report Report All | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| | | |
|------------------|---|--|
| <p>11</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Initiate Upgrade (part 1)</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 or later</p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 or later.</p> <p>Initiate the server upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the server to be upgraded. Click the “Upgrade Server” button. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>The Initiate Upgrade form will be displayed: Administration > Software Management > Upgrade [Initiate]</p> |
| <p>12</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Initiate Upgrade (part 2) – Select ISO form</p> <p>For Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 or later</p> | <p>This step is for an Active NOAM on release 7.1.1 or later.</p> <p>Initiate the server upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Upgrade Settings – Upgrade ISO pick list, select the ISO to use in the server upgrade, <p>Note: When the Active NOAM is the server being upgraded, selecting OK will initiate an HA switchover, causing the GUI session to log out. Before logging into the Active OAM again, close and re-open the browser using the VIP address for the NOAM, and then clear the browser cache. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared.</p> <p>Note: If the selected server is the active server in an Active/Standby pair, the OAM Max HA Role column will display “Active” with a red background. This is NOT an alarm condition. This indicator is to make the user aware that the Make Ready action WILL cause an HA switchover.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Ok button. The upgrade will begin and control will return to the Upgrade Administration screen. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]</p>  |

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

13

Active NOAM VIP:

View In-Progress Status (monitor)

View the Upgrade Administration form to monitor upgrade progress.

See step 14 for an optional method of monitoring upgrade progress.

See step 15 below for instructions if the Upgrade fails, or if execution time exceeds 60 minutes.

NOTE: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the Upgrade will be shown as "FAILED". The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.

1. Observe the **Upgrade State** of the server of interest. Upgrade status will be displayed under the **Status Message** column.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | Start Time |
|-------|---------|-------|-------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| | | | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | Status Message |
| | | | | Upgrading | OOS | Network: OAM&P | OAM&P | | 2015-01-29 10:49:57 EST |
| NO2 | | | | Unk | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | DSR-7.1.0.0_71.8.1-x86_64.iso | | Upgrade is in progress |
| NO1 | | | | Ready | Active | Network: OAM&P | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.8.0 | |
| | | | | Err | N/A | NO_DSR_VM | | | |

Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.

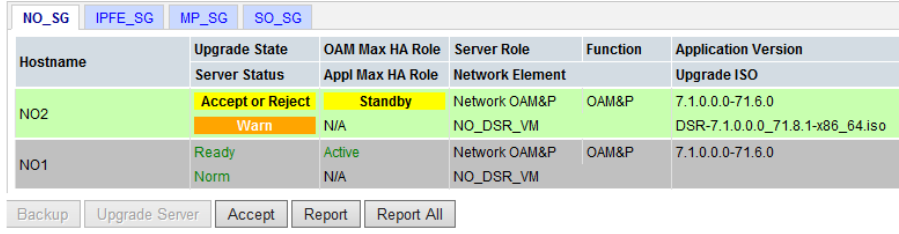
Note: Not all servers will have all alarms:

- Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)
- Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped)
- Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning)
- Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited)
- Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server)
- Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats)
- Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down)
- Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31104 (DB Replication over SOAP has failed)

2. Wait for the upgrade to complete. The "Status Message" column will show "Success". This step will take approximately 20 to 50 minutes.

If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with MOS on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix J for failed server recovery procedures.

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| 14 | <p>Server CLI:</p> <p>Optional : View In-Progress Status from command line of server</p> | <p>An optional method to view Upgrade progress from the command line:</p> <p>To view the detailed progress of the upgrade , access the server command line (via SSH or Console), and enter:</p> <pre>\$ tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>Once the server has upgraded, it will re-boot, and then it will take a couple of minutes for the DSR Application processes to start up.</p> <p>This command will show the current rev on the server:</p> <pre>\$ appRev Install Time: Tue Jun 17 08:20:57 2014 Product Name: DSR Product Release: 6.0.0_60.14.6 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 6.7.0.0.1_84.14.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-6.7.0.0.1_84.14.0- OracleLinux6.5-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.5</pre> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|----------|--|---|----------------------------|----------|---|-------|----------|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|--------------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------|---|-----|---------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------|----------------|
| 15 | <p>IF Upgrade Fails:</p> | <p>If the upgrade of a server fails, access the server command line (via ssh or a console), and collect the following files:</p> <pre>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log</pre> <p>It is recommended to contact MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document and provide these files.Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 16 | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify post upgrade status</p> | <p>Verify post upgrade status</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. Verify the Application Version value for this server has been updated to the target software release version. <p>If the Active NOAM is on release 7.0.1: Verify the Status Message indicates Success.</p> <p>If the Active NOAm is on release 7.1.1 or later: Verify the Upgrade State of the upgraded server is Accept or Reject.</p>  <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG</th> <th>MP_SG</th> <th>SO_SG</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Hostname</td> <td>Upgrade State</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role</td> <td>Server Role</td> <td>Function</td> <td>Application Version</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl Max HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Accept or Reject Warn</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.6.0 DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.8.1-x86_64.iso</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Ready Norm</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-71.6.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Upgrade Server Accept Report Report All</p> | NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.6.0 DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.8.1-x86_64.iso | NO1 | Ready Norm | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.6.0 |
| NO_SG | IPFE_SG | MP_SG | SO_SG | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Accept or Reject Warn | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.6.0 DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.8.1-x86_64.iso | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Ready Norm | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-71.6.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 71: Upgrade Single Server – Upgrade Administration

| | | |
|--|---|---|
| <p>17</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify the server was successfully upgraded</p> | <p>View the Post-Upgrade Status of the server:</p> <p>The Active NOAM or SOAM server may have some or all the following expected alarm(s):</p> <p>Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10010 (Stateful database not yet synchronized with mate database) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31000 (Program impaired by S/W Fault) Alarm ID = 31201 (Process Not Running) for eclipseHelp process Alarm ID = 31282 (The HA manager (cmha) is impaired by a s/w fault) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> <p>The Active NOAM or SOAM will have the following expected alarm until both NOAMs/SOAMs are upgraded: Alarm ID = 31233 – HA Secondary Path Down</p> <p>NOTE: Do Not Accept upgrade at this time. This alarm is OK.</p> |
| <p>18</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Procedure Complete</p> | <p>The single server upgrade is now complete.</p> <p>Return to the DSR upgrade procedure step that directed the execution of Appendix D.</p> |

Appendix E. UPGRADE MULTIPLE SERVERS – UPGRADE ADMINISTRATION

This Appendix provides the procedure for upgrading multiple servers in parallel.

Note that this procedure will be executed multiple times during the overall upgrade, depending on the number of servers in your DSR. Make multiple copies of Appendix E to mark up, or keep another form of written record of the steps performed.

Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration

| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure executes the Upgrade Multiple Servers – Upgrade Administration steps.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|--|----------------------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------|----------|---------------------|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|--|-------------|-----|-----------------------|---------------|----------------------------|-------|--------------------|-----|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------------|-------|------------------|
| <p>1.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>View the pre-upgrade status of Servers</p> | <p>View the pre-upgrade status of the servers.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <p>NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG SO_SG</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Hostname</th> <th>Upgrade State</th> <th>OAM Max HA Role</th> <th>Server Role</th> <th>Function</th> <th>Application Version</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl Max HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td></td> <td>Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO1</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Active N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-7.1.11.001</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NO2</td> <td>Backup Needed Norm</td> <td>Standby N/A</td> <td>Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM</td> <td>OAM&P</td> <td>7.1.0.0-7.1.11.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Backup Backup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All</p> </div> <p>Active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms: Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</p> | Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | NO1 | Backup Needed Norm | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-7.1.11.001 | NO2 | Backup Needed Norm | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-7.1.11.0 |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO1 | Backup Needed Norm | Active N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-7.1.11.001 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| NO2 | Backup Needed Norm | Standby N/A | Network OAM&P NO_DSR_VM | OAM&P | 7.1.0.0-7.1.11.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration

2. Active NOAM VIP:
Verify status of Servers to be upgraded

- For the servers to be upgraded:
1. Identify the MP servers to be upgraded in parallel _____ (record names)
 2. Verify the Application Version value is the expected source software release version for each MP server to be upgraded.
 3. From the **Administration > Software Management > Upgrade** screen, select the Server Group of the server to be upgraded.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

Filter Tasks

NO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG **SO_SG**

| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version |
|----------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|----------|---------------------|
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO |
| SO1 | Backup Needed | Active | System OAM | OAM | 7.1.0.0.0-71.11.0 |
| | Norm | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | | |
| SO2 | Backup Needed | Standby | System OAM | OAM | 7.1.0.0.0-71.11.0 |
| | Norm | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | | |

Backup Backup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All

4. If the server is in “**Backup Needed**” state, select the server and click the “**Backup**” button. The Upgrade State changes to “**Backup in Progress**”. When the backup is complete, the Upgrade State changes to “**Ready**”.
5. Verify the “OAM Max Ha Role” is the expected condition (either **Standby** or **Active**) (this will depend on the server being upgraded)

3. Active NOAM VIP:
Verify Upgrade Status is “Ready”

The Upgrade Administration form will be refreshed, and the server to be upgraded will show Upgrade Status = READY (This may take a minute). Depending on the server being upgraded, new alarms may occur.

The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed:

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

Filter Tasks

SO_SG IPFE_SG MP_SG NO_SG

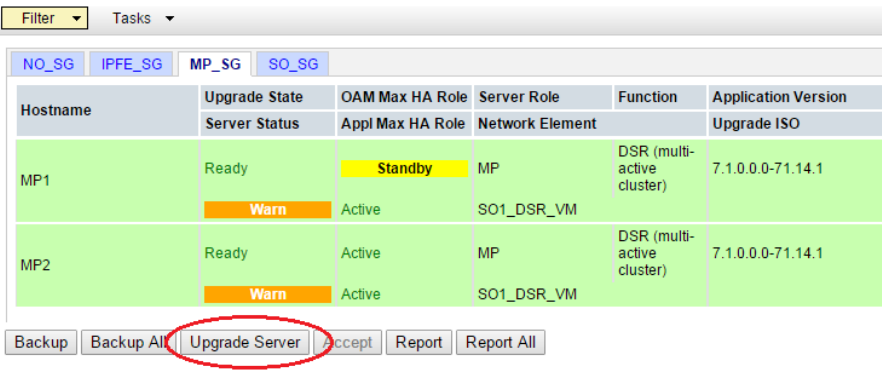
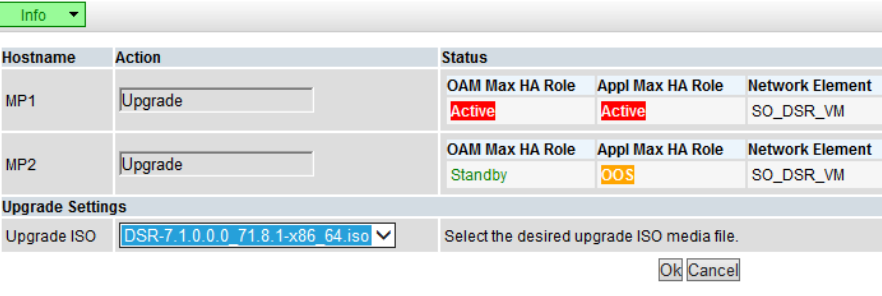
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version |
|----------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|----------|---------------------|
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO |
| SO1 | Ready | Active | System OAM | OAM | 7.1.0.0.0-71.11.0 |
| | Norm | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | | |
| SO2 | Ready | Standby | System OAM | OAM | 7.1.0.0.0-71.11.0 |
| | Norm | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | | |

Backup Backup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All

Servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms. NOTE: Not all servers will have all alarms:

- Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)
- Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning)
- Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped)
- Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited)
- Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication to slave DB has failed)
- Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge to Parent Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server)

Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration

| | | |
|------------------------------------|---|---|
| | <p>Determine upgrade method – manual or automatic</p> | <p>To upgrade multiple servers in parallel using the manual option, execute steps 4 and 5.</p> <p>To upgrade a server group using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option, proceed to step 6.</p> |
| <p>4. <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Initiate Upgrade (initiate) (part 1)</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> From the Upgrade Administration screen, select the servers to be upgraded. Click the “Upgrade Server” button. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p>  <p>The Initiate Upgrade form will be displayed: Administration > Software Management > Upgrade [Initiate]</p> |
| <p>5. <input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Initiate Upgrade (part 2) – Select ISO form</p> | <p>Start the upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the Upgrade Settings – Upgrade ISO pick list, select the ISO to use in the server upgrade, <p>Note: When the Active NOAM is the server being upgraded, selecting OK will initiate an HA switchover, causing the GUI session to log out. Before logging into the Active OAM again, close and re-open the browser using the VIP address for the NOAM, and then clear the browser cache. Some GUI forms may exhibit incorrect behaviors if the browser cache is not cleared.</p> <p>Note: If the selected server is the active server in an Active/Standby pair, the OAM Max HA Role column will display “Active” with a red background. This is NOT an alarm condition. This indicator is to make the user aware that the Make Ready action WILL cause an HA switchover.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Ok button. The upgrade will begin and control will return to the Upgrade Administration screen. <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]</p>  <p>Proceed to step 8 to complete this procedure.</p> |

Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration

6. Active NOAM VIP:

Initiate (part 1) - Automated Server Group Upgrade

Initiate the Automated Server Group Upgrade option

1. To utilize the Automated Server Group upgrade option, verify that no servers in the server group are selected.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

The screenshot shows a web interface for server management. At the top, there are tabs for 'MP_SG', 'IPFE_SG', 'NO_SG', and 'SO_SG'. Below the tabs is a table with columns: Hostname, Upgrade State, OAM Max HA Role, Server Role, Function, and Application Version. The table contains two rows for MP1 and MP2. Below the table, there are several buttons: 'Backup', 'Backup All', 'Auto Upgrade' (circled in red), 'Accept', 'Report', and 'Report All'.

| MP_SG | IPFE_SG | NO_SG | SO_SG |
|-------|---------|-------|-------|
| MP1 | | | |
| MP2 | | | |

| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version |
|----------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO |
| MP1 | Ready | Standby | MP | DSR (multi-active cluster) | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 |
| | Warn | Active | SO1_DSR_VM | | |
| MP2 | Ready | Active | MP | DSR (multi-active cluster) | 7.1.0.0-71.14.1 |
| | Warn | Active | SO1_DSR_VM | | |

Buttons: Backup, Backup All, **Auto Upgrade**, Accept, Report, Report All

2. Click the **Auto Upgrade** button.
The Upgrade [Initiate] screen is displayed.

Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration

7. Active NOAM VIP:
Initiate (part 2) - Automated Server Group Upgrade

Start the Automated Server Group Upgrade.

Note: The settings to be used in this step are specified in the calling procedure.

1. The **Upgrade Settings** section of the Initiate screen controls the behavior of the automated upgrade. Select the settings that apply to the server type being upgraded.

Bulk: Select this option for Active/Standby and multi-active server groups.
For servers in an Active/Standby configuration, the Standby server is upgraded first, followed by the Active. Servers in a multi-active configuration are upgraded in parallel to the extent allowed by the Availability setting.

Serial: Select this option to upgrade multiple servers one at a time.

Grouped Bulk: Select this option for SBR server groups.
Grouped bulk always upgrades the Spare(s), followed by the Standby, followed by the Active.

Availability: This setting determines how many servers will remain in service while servers in the server group are upgraded. For example, a setting of 50% will ensure that *at least* half of the servers *in the server group* remain in service.

Note: The **Serial** upgrade mode is available as an alternative to Bulk and Grouped Bulk for a more conservative upgrade scenario. Serial mode will upgrade each server in the server group one at a time, and can be used on any server group type.

2. Select the appropriate ISO from the **Upgrade ISO** pick list.
3. Click the **Ok** button to start the upgrade.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade [Initiate]

The screenshot shows the 'Upgrade [Initiate]' screen. At the top, there is an 'Info' dropdown. Below it is a table with columns: Hostname, Action, and Status. The Status column is further divided into OAM Max HA Role, Appl Max HA Role, and Network Element.

| Hostname | Action | OAM Max HA Role | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element |
|----------|--------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| MP1 | Auto upgrade | Standby | Active | SO1_DSR_VM |
| MP2 | Auto upgrade | Active | Active | SO1_DSR_VM |

Below the table is the 'Upgrade Settings' section, which is highlighted with a red border in the image. It contains the following fields:

- Mode:** Radio buttons for Bulk (selected), Serial, and Grouped Bulk.
- Availability:** A dropdown menu set to 50%.
- Upgrade ISO:** A dropdown menu set to DSR-7.1.0.0_71.14.1-x86_64.iso.

At the bottom right of the settings section are 'Ok' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration

8. Active NOAM VIP:

View In-Progress Status (monitor)

View the Upgrade Administration form to monitor upgrade progress.

See step 9 for an optional method of monitoring upgrade progress.

See step 10 below for instructions if the Upgrade fails, or if execution time exceeds 60 minutes.

Note: If the upgrade processing encounters a problem, it may attempt to ROLL BACK to the original software release. In this case, the Upgrade will be shown as "FAILED". The execution time may be shorter or longer, depending on the point in the upgrade where there was a problem.

1. Observe the **Upgrade State** of the servers of interest.

Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade

| Filter Status Tasks | | | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| MP_SG IPFE_SG NO_SG SO_SG | | | | | | |
| Hostname | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Version | |
| | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | | Upgrade ISO | |
| MP1 | Upgrading | Standby | MP | DSR (active/stand by pair) | 7.1.0.0.0-71.6.0 | |
| | Err | OOS | SO_DSR_VM | | DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.8.1-x86_64.iso | |
| MP2 | Upgrading | Spare | MP | DSR (active/stand by pair) | 7.1.0.0.0-71.6.0 | |
| | Err | OOS | SO_DSR_VM | | DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.8.1-x86_64.iso | |

Backup Backup All Auto Upgrade Accept Report Report All

During the upgrade, the servers may have a combination of the following expected alarms.
NOTE: Not all servers will have all alarms:

- Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled)
- Alarm ID = 10073 (Server Group Max Allowed HA Role Warning)
- Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped)
- Alarm ID = 31101 (DB Replication To Slave Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31106 (DB Merge To Parent Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31107 (DB Merge From Child Failure)
- Alarm ID = 31228 (HA Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats) or (Lost Communication with Mate Server)
- Alarm ID = 31233 (HA Secondary Path Down)
- Alarm ID = 31283 (Highly available server failed to receive mate heartbeats)
- Alarm ID = 32515 (Server HA Failover Inhibited)

2. Wait for the upgrades to complete. The **Upgrade State** column will transition through "Upgrading", "Rebooting", "Not Ready", and finally "Accept or Reject". This step will take approximately 20 to 50 minutes.

If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with MOS on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix J for failed server recovery procedures.

Procedure 72: Upgrade Multiple Servers - Upgrade Administration

| | | |
|--|--|--|
| <p>9.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Server CLI:</u></p> <p>Optional : View In-Progress Status from command line of server</p> | <p>Optional method to view Upgrade progress from a command line:</p> <p>To view the detailed progress of the upgrade – Access the server command line (via ssh or Console), and:</p> <pre>\$ tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>Once a server is upgraded, it will re-boot, and then it will take a couple of minutes for the DSR Application processes to start up.</p> <p>This command will show the current rev on the upgraded servers:</p> <pre>[admusr@NO1 ~]\$ appRev Install Time: Wed Feb 25 02:52:47 2015 Product Name: DSR Product Release: 7.1.0.0.0_71.10.0 Base Distro Product: TPD Base Distro Release: 7.0.0.0.0_86.14.0 Base Distro ISO: TPD.install-7.0.0.0.0_86.14.0-OracleLinux6.5-x86_64.iso ISO name: DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.10.0-x86_64.iso OS: OracleLinux 6.5</pre> <p>If the upgrade fails – do not proceed. It is recommended to consult with MOS on the best course of action. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p> |
| <p>10.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>IF Upgrade Fails:</p> | <p>If a server upgrade fails, access the server command line (via ssh or Console), and collect the following files:</p> <pre>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log</pre> <p>It is recommended to contact MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document and provide these files. Refer to Appendix I for failed server recovery procedures.</p> |
| <p>11.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p><u>Active NOAM VIP:</u></p> <p>Verify post upgrade status</p> | <p>Verify post-upgrade status</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed. 2. Verify the Application Version value for the servers has been updated to the target software release version. 3. Verify the Status Message indicates success. 4. Verify the Upgrade State of the upgraded servers is Accept or Reject. |
| <p>12.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Verify the servers were successfully upgraded</p> | <p>View Post-Upgrade Status of the server:</p> <p>The Active SOAM server may have some or all the following expected alarm(s):</p> <pre>Alarm ID = 10008 (Provisioning Manually Disabled) Alarm ID = 10010 (Stateful database not yet synchronized with mate database) Alarm ID = 10075 (The server is no longer providing services because application processes have been manually stopped) Alarm ID = 31000 (Program impaired by S/W Fault) Alarm ID = 32532 (Server Upgrade Pending Accept/Reject)</pre> <p>NOTE: Do Not Accept upgrade at this time. This alarm is OK.</p> |
| <p>13.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>Procedure Complete.</p> | <p>The multiple servers upgrade is now complete.</p> <p>Return to the DSR upgrade procedure step that directed the execution of Appendix E.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED</p> |

Appendix F. EXPIRED PASSWORD WORKAROUND PROCEDURE

This appendix provides the procedures to handle password expiration during upgrade. Procedure 73 is a temporary workaround to allow an expired password to be used on a non-upgrade site. This procedure is provided as a workaround when a password expires after the NOAM has been upgraded and before all sites have been upgraded.

The workaround must be removed using Procedure 74 after the site is upgraded. Failure to remove the workaround will inhibit password aging on the server.

Appendix F.1. Inhibit Password Aging

This procedure enacts a workaround that inhibits password aging on the SOAM. This procedure should be used only when the following conditions apply:

- An upgrade is in progress
- The NOAMs have been upgraded, but one or more sites have not been upgraded
- A login password has expired on a non-upgraded site

Once the workaround is enacted, no passwords will expire at that site. It is expected that the workaround will be removed once the site is upgraded.

Procedure 73: Expired Password Workaround Procedure

| | | |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure disables password aging on a server, allowing “expired” credentials to be used for login.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1 | <p>Active SOAM CLI:</p> <p>SSH to Active SOAM server</p> | <p>Disable password aging.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to login to the Active SOAM of the first non-upgraded site: <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM_VIP></pre> (Answer ‘yes’ if prompted to confirm the identity of the server.) 2. Create a text file with the following content (exactly as formatted): <pre>[production] aw.policy.pwchange.isExpired = aw.policy.db.checkPw = [development : production] [test : development]</pre> 3. Save the file as: <pre>/var/TKLC/appworks/ini/pw.ini</pre> 4. Change the file permissions: <pre>\$ chmod 644 pw.ini</pre> 5. Execute the following command: <pre>\$ sudo clearCache</pre> <p>NOTE: For each server on which this workaround is enacted, the old “expired” password must be used for login. The new password that is used on the NOAM will not work on these servers.</p> |

Procedure 73: Expired Password Workaround Procedure

| | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|--|
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for Standby SOAM | Repeat step 1 for the Standby SOAM |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all non-upgraded sites | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for all non-upgraded sites. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

Appendix F.2. Enable Password Aging

This procedure removes the password expiration workaround that is enabled by Procedure 73.

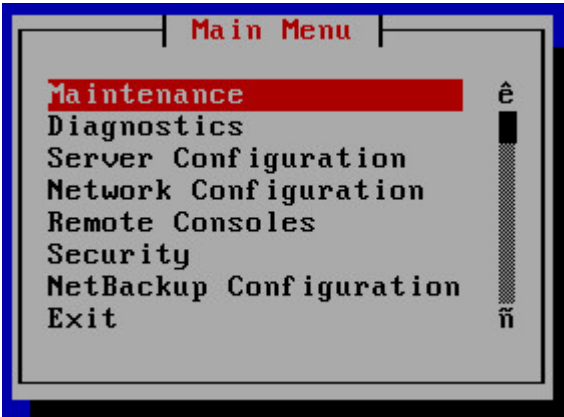
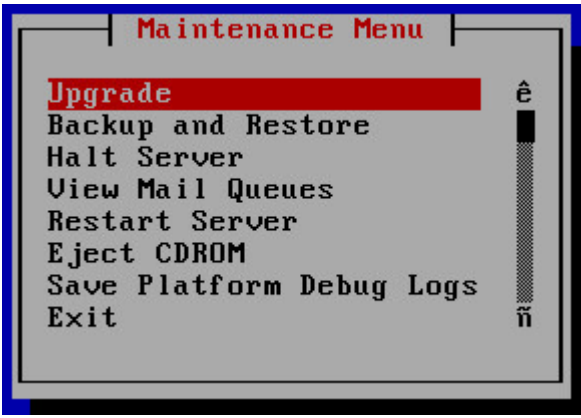
Procedure 74: Expired Password Workaround Removal Procedure

| | | |
|---|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure removes the password aging workaround and re-enables password aging on a server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | <p>Active SOAM CLI:</p> <p>SSH to Active SOAM server</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on windows) to login to the Active SOAM of the first non-upgraded site: <pre>ssh admusr@<SOAM_VIP></pre> <p>(Answer 'yes' if prompted to confirm the identity of the server.)</p> 2. Delete the pw.ini file: <pre>\$ sudo rm /var/TKLC/appworks/ini/pw.ini</pre> 3. Execute the following command: <pre>\$ sudo clearCache</pre> |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for Standby SOAM | Repeat step 1 for the Standby SOAM |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | Repeat for all non-upgraded sites | Repeat steps 1 and 2 for all non-upgraded sites. |
| THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED. | | |

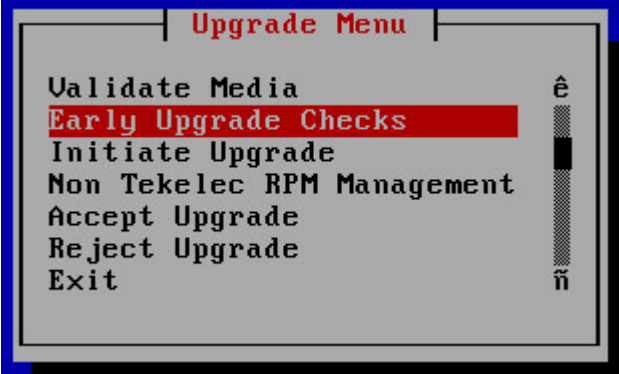
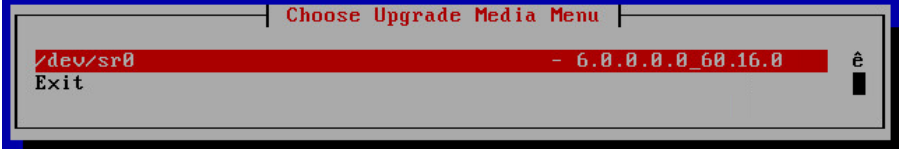
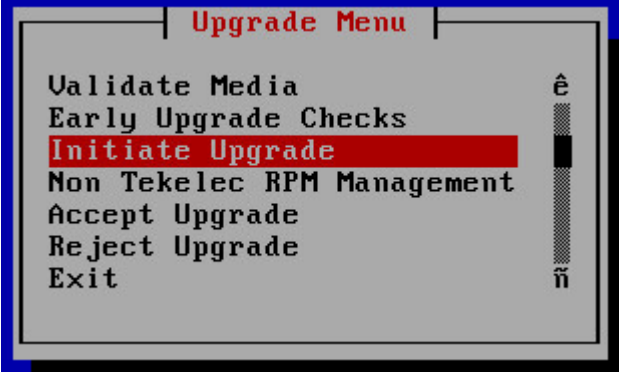
Appendix G. SERVER UPGRADE USING PLATCFG

The procedure provided in this appendix enables a server to be upgraded using the Platform Configuration (platcfg) utility. This procedure should be used only under the guidance and direction of MOS.

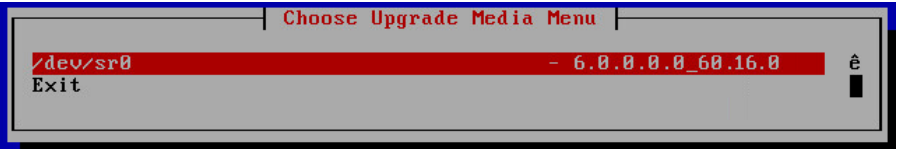
Procedure 75: Server Upgrade Using Platcfg

| | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|---|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure upgrades a server using the platcfg utility. NOTE: All UI displays are sample representations of upgrade screens. The actual display may vary slightly for those shown.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | |
| 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | Login to the server to be upgraded | Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems - or putty if running on Windows) to log into the server to be upgraded: <pre>ssh admusr@<server_ip></pre> |
| 2 <input type="checkbox"/> | Enter the platcfg menu | Switch to the platcfg user to start the configuration menu. <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> From the Main Menu, select Maintenance  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Main Menu". The menu items are: Maintenance (highlighted with a red bar), Diagnostics, Server Configuration, Network Configuration, Remote Consoles, Security, NetBackup Configuration, and Exit. Navigation arrows are shown on the right side of the menu.</p> |
| 3 <input type="checkbox"/> | Select Upgrade | From the Maintenance Menu, select Upgrade  <p>The screenshot shows a terminal window titled "Maintenance Menu". The menu items are: Upgrade (highlighted with a red bar), Backup and Restore, Halt Server, View Mail Queues, Restart Server, Eject CDROM, Save Platform Debug Logs, and Exit. Navigation arrows are shown on the right side of the menu.</p> |

Procedure 75: Server Upgrade Using Platcfg

| | | |
|----------|------------------------------------|---|
| <p>4</p> | <p>Select Early Upgrade Checks</p> | <p>From the Upgrade Menu, select Early Upgrade Checks</p>  |
| <p>5</p> | <p>Select the Upgrade Media</p> | <p>1. From the Choose Upgrade Media Menu, select the desired target media. This will initiate the early upgrade checks in the console window.</p>  <p>Informational messages will be displayed as the checks progress. At the end of a successful test, a message similar to the following will appear:</p> <pre>Running earlyUpgradeChecks() for Upgrade::EarlyPolicy:: TPDEarlyChecks upgrade policy... Verified server is not pending accept of previous upgrade Hardware architectures match Install products match. Verified server is alarm free! Early Upgrade Checks Have Passed!</pre> <p>2. Verify early upgrade checks pass. In case of errors, it is recommended to contact MOS. 3. Press 'q' to exit the screen session and return to the platcfg menu. 4. From the Choose Upgrade Media Menu, select Exit.</p> |
| <p>6</p> | <p>Initiate the upgrade</p> | <p>From the Upgrade Menu, select Initiate Upgrade.</p>  |

Procedure 75: Server Upgrade Using Platcfg

| | | |
|----|----------------------------|--|
| 7 | Select the Upgrade Media | <p>The screen will display a message that it is searching for upgrade media. Once the upgrade media is found, an Upgrade Media selection menu will be displayed similar to the example shown below.</p> <p>From the Choose Upgrade Media Menu, select the desired target media. This will initiate the server upgrade.</p>  <p>Many informational messages will come across the terminal screen as the upgrade proceeds.</p> <p>Finally, after upgrade is complete, the server will reboot.</p> <pre>A reboot of the server is required. The server will be rebooted in 10 seconds</pre> |
| 8 | SSH to the upgraded server | <p>Use the SSH command (on UNIX systems – or putty if running on Windows) to log into the server just upgraded:</p> <pre>ssh admusr@<server_IP></pre> <p>(Answer 'yes' if you are prompted to confirm the identity of the server.)</p> |
| 9 | Check for upgrade errors | <p>Examine the upgrade logs in the directory /var/TKLC/log/upgrade and verify that no errors were reported.</p> <pre>grep -i error /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>Examine the output of the above command to determine if any errors were reported.</p> <p>If the upgrade fails, collect the following files:</p> <pre>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/ugwrap.log /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log /var/TKLC/log/platcfg/upgrade.log</pre> <p>It is recommended to contact MOS by referring to Appendix J of this document and provide these files.</p> |
| 10 | Verify the upgrade | <p>Check the upgrade log for the upgrade complete message</p> <pre>grep "UPGRADE IS COMPLETE" /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>Verify that the message "UPGRADE IS COMPLETE" is displayed. If not, it is recommended to contact MOS.</p> <pre>[admusr@NO2 ~]\$ grep "UPGRADE IS COMPLETE" /var/TKLC/log/ upgrade/upgrade.log 1407786220:: UPGRADE IS COMPLETE</pre> |

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED.

Appendix H. IDIH UPGRADE AT A SITE

In IDIH release 7.1 and later, the mediation and application instance data is stored in the Oracle Database. This allows the Application and Mediation servers to be upgraded by performing a fresh installation. Upon completion of the upgrade, the mediation and application guests will automatically restore the configuration data from the Oracle database.

Table 14 shows the elapsed time estimates for IDIH upgrade.

Table 14: IDIH Upgrade Execution Overview

| Procedure | Elapsed Time (hr:min) | | Procedure Title | Impact |
|--------------|-----------------------|------------|--|--------|
| | This Step | Cumulative | | |
| Procedure 76 | 1:15-1:45 | 1:15-1:45 | Oracle Guest Upgrade | None |
| Procedure 77 | 0:30-0:45 | 1:45-2:30 | Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests | None |

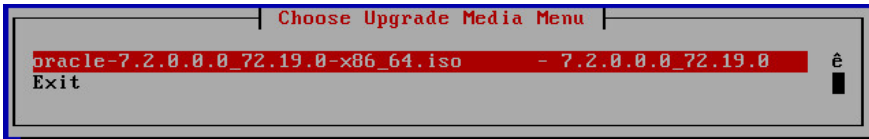
Appendix H.1. Oracle Guest Upgrade

The Oracle Guest is upgraded first.

Procedure 76: Oracle Guest Upgrade

| | | |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| S T E P # | This procedure performs the IDIH Oracle Guest upgrade. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE | |
| | 1 <input type="checkbox"/> | IDIH CLI: Perform system health check |

Procedure 76: Oracle Guest Upgrade

| | | |
|--|-------------------------|---|
| <p>2</p> <p>Shutdown Mediation guest</p> | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> | <p>Shutdown the Mediation guest in preparation for the Oracle guest upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Login in to the Mediation guest as admusr user. <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> 2. Shutdown the Mediation guest. <pre>\$ sudo init 0</pre> <p>The Active SOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms: Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down Alarm ID = 11511 Unable to connect via Comagent to remote DIH server with hostname</p> <p>The Active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms: Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down</p> |
| <p>3</p> <p>Shutdown Application guest</p> | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> | <p>Shutdown the Application guest in preparation for the Oracle guest upgrade.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Login in to the Application guest as admusr user. <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> 2. Shutdown the Application guest. <pre>\$ sudo init 0</pre> <p>The Active SOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms: Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down Alarm ID = 11511 Unable to connect via Comagent to remote DIH server with hostname</p> <p>The Active NOAM server may have some or all of the following expected alarms: Alarm ID = 19800 Communication Agent Connection Down</p> |
| <p>4</p> <p>Move Oracle ISO.</p> | | <p>Use a file transfer tool to copy the Oracle ISO to the Oracle guest as admusr.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$ scp oracle-7.2.0.0.0_72.21.0-x86_64.iso admusr@<ora-guest-ip>:/var/TKLC/upgrade</pre> |
| <p>5</p> <p>Start Oracle guest upgrade</p> | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> | <p>The Oracle guest is upgraded using the Platform Configuration utility.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Launch the platform configuration utility. <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> 2. In the resulting menu, select Maintenance > Upgrade > Initiate Upgrade. 3. At the ISO selection menu, select the target release Oracle ISO and press the Enter key.  |

Procedure 76: Oracle Guest Upgrade

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 6 | IDIH CLI: Monitor upgrade progress | <p>The platform configuration menu will exit and the guest will reboot when the upgrade completes.</p> <p>To view the detailed progress of the upgrade, access the server command line (via SSH or Console), and enter:</p> <pre style="text-align: center;">\$ tail -f /var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</pre> <p>Once the server has upgraded, it will re-boot, then it will take a couple of minutes for the Oracle processes to start up.</p> |
| 7 | IDIH CLI: Perform system health check | <p>Wait a few minutes to allow the Oracle guest to stabilize after the reboot, and then repeat step 1 to perform the post-upgrade system health check.</p> <p>Note: the following warnings are expected due to the mediation and app servers being shutdown.</p> <pre>Warning: mediation server is not reachable (or ping response exceeds 3 seconds) Warning: app server is not reachable (or ping response exceeds 3 seconds)</pre> |

THIS PROCEDURE HAS BEEN COMPLETED

Appendix H.2. Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests

The Mediation and Application Guest upgrade is similar to the installation procedure.

Procedure 77: Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests

| | | |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| S T E P # | <p>This procedure performs the IDIH Mediation and Application server upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| 1 | <p>CLOUD GUI:</p> <p>Remove existing Application Server</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the hypervisor-specific procedure to remove the current iDIH Application and iDIH Mediation guests. |
| 2 | <p>CLOUD GUI:</p> <p>Deploy the latest application and mediation guest images</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Use the hypervisor-specific procedure to deploy the latest Application and Mediation guests. 2. Configure the iDIH mediation and application guests to reflect the guest profile in the installation document [1]. |
| 3 | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> <p>Configure the network rules file</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Login in to the iDIH Mediation guest as the admusr user. <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> 2. Generate the net rules file <pre>\$ sudo udevadm trigger --subsystem-match=net</pre> 3. Update the net rules file. Replace the default interface names “eth0” with “xmi” and “eth1” with “int”. For the Mediation guest, rename the third interface from “eth2” to “imi”. <pre>\$ sudo vi /etc/udev/rules.d/70-persistent-net.rules</pre>  <pre> # PCI device 0x15ad:0x07b0 (vmxnet3) SUBSYSTEM=="net", ACTION=="add", DRIVERS=="?*", ATTR(address)=="00:50:56:b9:2d:b b", ATTR(type)=="1", KERNEL=="eth*", NAME="eth1" # PCI device 0x15ad:0x07b0 (vmxnet3) SUBSYSTEM=="net", ACTION=="add", DRIVERS=="?*", ATTR(address)=="00:50:56:b9:ea:b 2", ATTR(type)=="1", KERNEL=="eth*", NAME="eth0" # PCI device 0x15ad:0x07b0 (vmxnet3) SUBSYSTEM=="net", ACTION=="add", DRIVERS=="?*", ATTR(address)=="00:50:56:b9:2d:b b", ATTR(type)=="1", KERNEL=="eth*", NAME="int" # PCI device 0x15ad:0x07b0 (vmxnet3) SUBSYSTEM=="net", ACTION=="add", DRIVERS=="?*", ATTR(address)=="00:50:56:b9:ea:b 2", ATTR(type)=="1", KERNEL=="eth*", NAME="xmi"</pre> 4. Reboot the server: <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> 5. Repeat sub-steps 1 thru 4 for the application guest. |

Procedure 77: Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests

| | | |
|---|---|--|
| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure performs the IDIH Mediation and Application server upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| <p>4</p> | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> <p>Configure the network interfaces for the mediation guest.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Login in to the iDIH Mediation guest as the admusr user. <pre>ssh <IDIH IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> 2. Configure the xmi network with its ip address and netmask. <pre>\$ sudo netAdm add -device=xmi -address=x.x.x.x -netmask=x.x.x.x -onboot=yes -bootproto=none</pre> 3. Configure the default route. <pre>\$ sudo netAdm add -route=default -device=xmi -gateway=x.x.x.x</pre> 4. Configure the int network its ip address and netmask. <pre>\$ sudo netAdm add -device=int -address=10.254.254.3 - netmask=255.255.255.224 -onboot=yes -bootproto=none</pre> 5. Ping the oracle guest to verify network connectivity <pre>\$ ping oracle</pre> 6. Configure the imi network with its ip address and netmask. *(mediation guest only) <pre>\$ sudo netAdm add -device=imi -address=x.x.x.x -netmask=x.x.x.x -onboot=yes -bootproto=none</pre> 7. Repeat sub-steps 1 thru 5 for the application guest. |
| <p>5</p> | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> <p>Configure the network time protocol for the mediation and application guests.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the iDIH Mediation guest, launch the platform configuration menu. <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> 2. From the platform configuration menu, configure ntpserver1 with the ip address supplied for NTP. Select: <pre>Network Configuration -> NTP -> Edit -> ntpserver1</pre> <p>Select "Yes" when prompted to restart NTP.</p> 3. Exit the network configuration menu. 4. To configure the Oracle VM hostname, select: <pre>Server Configuration -> Hostname -> Edit</pre> <p>Note: the Mediation and Application guest hostnames should follow the format 'xxx-med' and 'xxx-app', where 'xxx' can be any valid hostname characters.</p> 5. Exit the platform configuration menu. 6. Repeat sub-steps 1 through 5 for the iDIH Application guest. |
| <p>6</p> | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> <p>Run the mediation post installation script.</p> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the iDIH mediation guest, run the post installation script and monitor the script until it completes. <pre>\$ sudo /opt/xIH/mediation/install.sh</pre> 2. Reconfigure the hostname in the comcol database. <pre>\$ sudo su - tekelec \$ sudo iset -fnodename=`hostname` -fhostname=`hostname` NodeInfo where 1=1</pre> |

Procedure 77: Upgrade the Mediation and Application Guests

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| <p>S</p> <p>T</p> <p>E</p> <p>P</p> <p>#</p> | <p>This procedure performs the IDIH Mediation and Application server upgrade.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE</p> | |
| <p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>IDIH CLI</p> <p>Run the application guest post installation script.</p> | <p>1. On the iDIH application guest, run the post installation script and monitor the script until it completes.</p> <pre style="color: blue;">\$ sudo /opt/xIH/apps/install.sh</pre> |
| <p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p> | <p>IDIH CLI:</p> <p>Run the healthcheck scripts on the mediation and application guests.</p> | <p>After the post installation script has completed on the application guests.</p> <p>Run the healthcheck script on the application and mediation guests.</p> <pre style="color: blue;">\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/xIH/plat/bin/analyze_server.sh -i</pre> |

Appendix I. RECOVERING FROM A FAILED UPGRADE

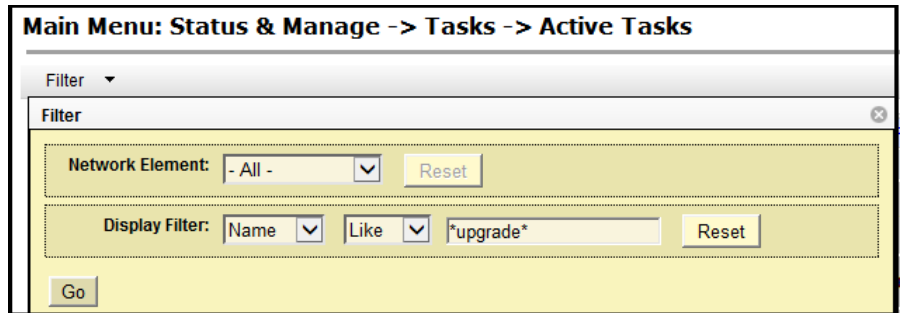
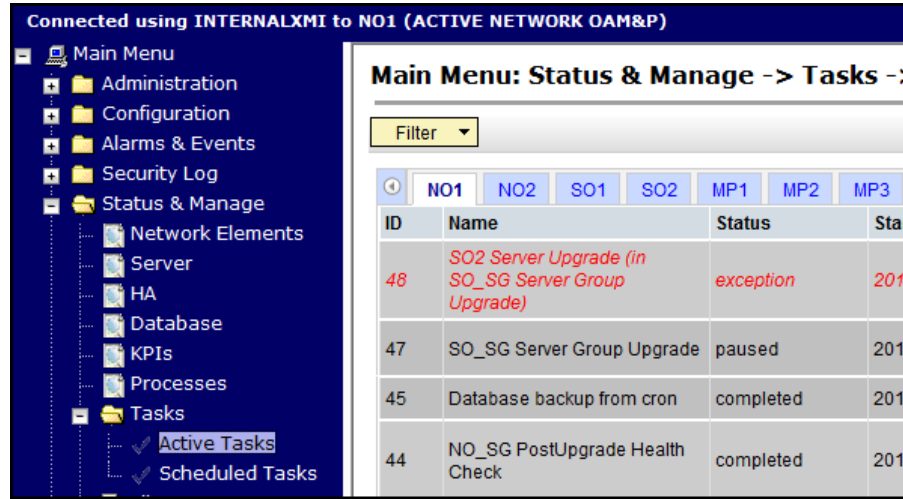
This procedure provides the steps required to recover a server after a failed upgrade. Due to the complexity of the DSR system and the nature of troubleshooting, it is recommended to contact MOS for guidance while executing this procedure.

Procedure 78: Recovering from a Failed Upgrade

| <p>S T E P #</p> | <p>This procedure provides the basic steps for returning a server to a normal state after an upgrade failure. Note that the server will be returned to the source release by this procedure.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>SHOULD THIS PROCEDURE FAIL, IT IS RECOMMENDED TO CONTACT MOS AND ASK FOR UPGRADE ASSISTANCE.</p> | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|--|------------------|-----------------|---------------|-----------------|----------|----------|--------|-------|-------|----------|--|---------------|-----------------|-------------|----------|----------------|--|--|--|--|---------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------|--|--|--|-----|--|-------|--------|------------|-----|-----------------|--|--|--|--|-----|-----|------------|--|--|--|--|-----|--|--------|---------|------------|-----|-----------------|--|--|--|--|-----|-----|------------|---------------|--|--|--|
| <p>1</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Select affected server group</p> | <p>From the Upgrade screen, select the server group containing the failed server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Log into the NOAM GUI using the VIP. 2. Navigate to Administration > Software Management > Upgrade The Upgrade Administration screen is displayed 3. Select the server group tab for the server to be recovered. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>Main Menu: Administration -> Software Management -> Upgrade</p> <p>Filter ▾ Tasks ▾</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th>NO_SG</th> <th>DRNO_SG</th> <th>IPFE_SG1</th> <th>IPFE_SG2</th> <th>IPFE_SG3</th> <th>IPFE_SG4</th> <th>MP_SG1</th> <th>SO_SG</th> <th>S37MP</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="2">Hostname</td> <td>Upgrade State</td> <td>OAM Max HA Role</td> <td>Server Role</td> <td>Function</td> <td colspan="3">Application Ve</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"></td> <td>Server Status</td> <td>Appl Max HA Role</td> <td>Network Element</td> <td colspan="4">Upgrade ISO</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SO1</td> <td>Ready</td> <td>Active</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td colspan="3">7.0.1.0.0-70.28</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"></td> <td>Err</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td colspan="4"></td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2">SO2</td> <td>Failed</td> <td>Standby</td> <td>System OAM</td> <td>OAM</td> <td colspan="3">7.0.1.0.0-70.28</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="2"></td> <td>Err</td> <td>N/A</td> <td>SO1_DSR_VM</td> <td colspan="4">DSR-7.2.0.0.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | NO_SG | DRNO_SG | IPFE_SG1 | IPFE_SG2 | IPFE_SG3 | IPFE_SG4 | MP_SG1 | SO_SG | S37MP | Hostname | | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Ve | | | | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | | SO1 | | Ready | Active | System OAM | OAM | 7.0.1.0.0-70.28 | | | | | Err | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | | | | | SO2 | | Failed | Standby | System OAM | OAM | 7.0.1.0.0-70.28 | | | | | Err | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | DSR-7.2.0.0.0 | | | |
| NO_SG | DRNO_SG | IPFE_SG1 | IPFE_SG2 | IPFE_SG3 | IPFE_SG4 | MP_SG1 | SO_SG | S37MP | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Hostname | | Upgrade State | OAM Max HA Role | Server Role | Function | Application Ve | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Server Status | Appl Max HA Role | Network Element | Upgrade ISO | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SO1 | | Ready | Active | System OAM | OAM | 7.0.1.0.0-70.28 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Err | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| SO2 | | Failed | Standby | System OAM | OAM | 7.0.1.0.0-70.28 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Err | N/A | SO1_DSR_VM | DSR-7.2.0.0.0 | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the failed server was upgraded using the “Upgrade Server” option, then skip to step 7 of this procedure • If the failed server was upgraded using the “Auto Upgrade” option, then continue with step 2 of this procedure. | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 78: Recovering from a Failed Upgrade


| | |
|---|--|
| <p>2</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>View Active Tasks</p> | <p>Navigate to the Active Tasks screen to view the tasks.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Navigate to Status & Manage > Tasks > Active Tasks The Active Tasks screen is displayed. |
| <p>3</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Search for upgrade task</p> | <p>Use the filter to locate the server group upgrade task.</p> <p>From the Active NOAM GUI:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Click the Filter dropdown and enter the following filter values: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Network Element: All Display Filter: Name Like *upgrade* Click the Go button. |



Procedure 78: Recovering from a Failed Upgrade

| <p>4</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Identify the upgrade task</p> | <p>In the search results list, locate the Server Group Upgrade task.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. If not already selected, select the tab displaying the hostname of the Active NOAM server. 2. Locate the task for the Server Group Upgrade. It will show a status of "paused". <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Tasks -> Active Tasks (Filtered)</p> <p>Filter ▼</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Start Time</th> <th>Update Time</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>48</td> <td>SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)</td> <td>exception</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:40:11 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>47</td> <td>SO_SG Server Group Upgrade</td> <td>paused</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:40:07 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>46</td> <td>SO2 Server Upgrade</td> <td>exception</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:16:01 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>44</td> <td>NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>2016-03-22 17:14:51 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-22 17:15:06 UTC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>42</td> <td>NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check</td> <td>completed</td> <td>2016-03-21 14:56:08 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-21 14:56:19 UTC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | ID | Name | Status | Start Time | Update Time | 48 | SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade) | exception | 2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC | 2016-03-23 13:40:11 UTC | 47 | SO_SG Server Group Upgrade | paused | 2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC | 2016-03-23 13:40:07 UTC | 46 | SO2 Server Upgrade | exception | 2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC | 2016-03-23 13:16:01 UTC | 44 | NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | 2016-03-22 17:14:51 UTC | 2016-03-22 17:15:06 UTC | 42 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | 2016-03-21 14:56:08 UTC | 2016-03-21 14:56:19 UTC |
|--|--|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|---|--|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----|----------------------------|--------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----|--------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----|--------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----|-------------------------------|-----------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| ID | Name | Status | Start Time | Update Time | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 48 | SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade) | exception | 2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC | 2016-03-23 13:40:11 UTC | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 47 | SO_SG Server Group Upgrade | paused | 2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC | 2016-03-23 13:40:07 UTC | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 46 | SO2 Server Upgrade | exception | 2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC | 2016-03-23 13:16:01 UTC | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 44 | NO_SG PostUpgrade Health Check | completed | 2016-03-22 17:14:51 UTC | 2016-03-22 17:15:06 UTC | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 42 | NO_SG PreUpgrade Health Check | completed | 2016-03-21 14:56:08 UTC | 2016-03-21 14:56:19 UTC | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>5</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Cancel the upgrade task</p> | <p>Cancel the Server Group Upgrade task.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Click the Server Group Upgrade task to select it. It will become highlighted on the screen. 2. Click the Cancel button to cancel the task. 3. Click OK on the confirmation dialog box to confirm the cancellation. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Main Menu: Status & Manage -> Tasks -> Active Tasks (Filtered)</p> <p>Filter ▼</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>ID</th> <th>Name</th> <th>Status</th> <th>Start Time</th> <th>Update Time</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>48</td> <td>SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade)</td> <td>exception</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-</td> </tr> <tr style="background-color: #e0ffe0;"> <td>47</td> <td>SO_SG Server Group Upgrade</td> <td>paused</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>46</td> <td>SO2 Server Upgrade</td> <td>exception</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC</td> <td>2016-03-</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p> <input type="button" value="Pause"/> <input type="button" value="Restart"/> <input style="border: 2px solid red;" type="button" value="Cancel"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> <input type="button" value="Delete All Completed"/> <input type="button" value="Delete All Exce"/> </p> </div> | ID | Name | Status | Start Time | Update Time | 48 | SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade) | exception | 2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC | 2016-03- | 47 | SO_SG Server Group Upgrade | paused | 2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC | 2016-03- | 46 | SO2 Server Upgrade | exception | 2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC | 2016-03- | | | | | | | | | | |
| ID | Name | Status | Start Time | Update Time | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 48 | SO2 Server Upgrade (in SO_SG Server Group Upgrade) | exception | 2016-03-23 13:38:36 UTC | 2016-03- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 47 | SO_SG Server Group Upgrade | paused | 2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC | 2016-03- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 46 | SO2 Server Upgrade | exception | 2016-03-23 13:14:10 UTC | 2016-03- | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| <p>6</p> <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> <p>Verify task cancellation</p> | <p>Verify the Server Group Upgrade task is canceled.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. On the Active Tasks screen, verify the task that was canceled in step 5 shows a status of "completed". <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>47</td> <td>SO_SG Server Group Upgrade</td> <td>completed</td> <td>2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>2016-03-23 16:24:27 UTC</td> <td> <div style="border: 2px solid red; border-radius: 50%; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> SG upgrade task cancelled by user. </div> </td> <td>5%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> </div> | 47 | SO_SG Server Group Upgrade | completed | 2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC | 2016-03-23 16:24:27 UTC | <div style="border: 2px solid red; border-radius: 50%; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> SG upgrade task cancelled by user. </div> | 5% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 47 | SO_SG Server Group Upgrade | completed | 2016-03-23 13:38:26 UTC | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| 2016-03-23 16:24:27 UTC | <div style="border: 2px solid red; border-radius: 50%; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> SG upgrade task cancelled by user. </div> | 5% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Procedure 78: Recovering from a Failed Upgrade

| | | |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| <p>7</p> <p>Inspect upgrade log</p> | <p>Failed server CLI:</p> | <p>Login to the failed server to inspect the upgrade log for the cause of the failure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use an SSH client to connect to the failed server: <pre>ssh <XMI IP address> login as: admusr password: <enter password></pre> <p>Note: The static XMI IP address for each server should be available in Table 3.</p> View or edit the upgrade log at <code>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/upgrade.log</code> for clues to the cause of the upgrade failure. If the upgrade log contains a message similar to the following, inspect the early upgrade log at <code>/var/TKLC/log/upgrade/earlyChecks.log</code> for additional clues. <pre>1440613685::Early Checks failed for the next upgrade 1440613691::Look at earlyChecks.log for more info</pre> |
| <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Although outside of the scope of this document, the user is expected to use standard troubleshooting techniques to clear the alarm condition from the failed server. If troubleshooting assistance is needed, it is recommended to contact MOS as described in Appendix J - Accessing Oracle Customer Support Site DO NOT PROCEED TO STEP 8 OF THIS PROCEDURE UNTIL THE ALARM CONDITION HAS BEEN CLEARED! </div> | | |
| <p>8</p> <p>Verify Platform alarms are cleared</p> | <p>Failed Server CLI:</p> | <p>Verify all Platform alarms have been cleared from the failed server.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use the alarmMgr utility to verify that all Platform alarms have been cleared from the system. <pre>\$ sudo alarmMgr --alarmstatus</pre> <p>Example output:</p> <pre>[admusr@SO2 ~]\$ sudo alarmMgr --alarmstatus SEQ: 2 UPTIME: 827913 BIRTH: 1458738821 TYPE: SET ALARM: TKSPLATMI10 tpdNTPDaemonNotSynchronizedWarning 1.3.6.1.4.1.323.5.3.18 .3.1.3.10 32509 Communications Communications Subsystem Failure</pre> <p>**** user troubleshoots alarm and is able to resolve NTP sync issue and clear alarm ****</p> <pre>[admusr@SO2 ~]\$ sudo alarmMgr --alarmstatus [admusr@SO2 ~]\$</pre> |
| <p>9</p> <p>Re-execute the server upgrade</p> | <p>Active NOAM VIP:</p> | <p>Return to the upgrade procedure being executed when the failure occurred. Re-execute the upgrade for the failed server using the “Upgrade Server” option.</p> <p>Note: Once a server has failed while using the Automated Server Group Upgrade option, the “Auto Upgrade” option cannot be used again on that server group. The remaining servers in that server group must be upgraded using the “Upgrade Server” option.</p> |

Appendix J. ACCESSING ORACLE CUSTOMER SUPPORT SITE

My Oracle Support

My Oracle Support (MOS) (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at **1-800-223-1711** (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>. When calling, there are multiple layers of menu selections. Make the selections in the sequence shown below on the Support telephone menu:

1. For the first set of menu options, select 2, “New Service Request”. You will hear another set of menu options.
2. In this set of menu options, select 3, “Hardware, Networking and Solaris Operating System Support”. A third set of menu options begins.
3. In the third set of options, select 2, “Non-technical issue”. Then you will be connected to a live agent who can assist you with MOS registration and provide Support Identifiers. Simply mention you are a Tekelec Customer new to MOS.

MOS is available 24 hours a day, 7 days a week, 365 days a year.

Emergency Response

In the event of a critical service situation, emergency response is offered by the CAS main number at **1-800-223-1711** (toll-free in the US), or by calling the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>. The emergency response provides immediate coverage, automatic escalation, and other features to ensure that the critical situation is resolved as rapidly as possible.

A critical situation is defined as a problem with the installed equipment that severely affects service, traffic, or maintenance capabilities, and requires immediate corrective action. Critical situations affect service and/or system operation resulting in one or several of these situations:

- A total system failure that results in loss of all transaction processing capability
- Significant reduction in system capacity or traffic handling capability
- Loss of the system’s ability to perform automatic system reconfiguration
- Inability to restart a processor or the system
- Corruption of system databases that requires service affecting corrective actions
- Loss of access for maintenance or recovery operations
- Loss of the system ability to provide any required critical or major trouble notification

Any other problem severely affecting service, capacity/traffic, billing, and maintenance capabilities may be defined as critical by prior discussion and agreement with Oracle.

Locate Product Documentation on the Oracle Help Center

Oracle Communications customer documentation is available on the web at the Oracle Help Center (OHC) site, <http://docs.oracle.com>. You do not have to register to access these documents. Viewing these files requires Adobe Acrobat Reader, which can be downloaded at <http://www.adobe.com>.

1. Access the **Oracle Help Center** site at <http://docs.oracle.com>.
2. Click **Industries**.
3. Under the **Oracle Communications** subheading, click the **Oracle Communications documentation** link. The Communications Documentation page appears. Most products covered by these documentation sets will appear under the headings “**Network Session Delivery and Control Infrastructure**” or “**Platforms**.”
4. Click on your Product and then the Release Number. A list of the entire documentation set for the selected product and release appears.
5. To download a file to your location, right-click the PDF link, select **Save target as** (or similar command based on your browser), and save to a local folder.